

# Appendix E

---

Site Management Plan

---

**Site Management Plan  
for the Fuego Farms LLC Cannabis Cultivation Operation  
at  
22750 Carancho Road, Temecula, California**

January 14, 2021

Cultivator:

Fuego Farms LLC

CUP 190038

Development Agreement 190027

Prepared for:

Regional Water Quality Control Board

Prepared by:

Natural Investigations Co., Inc.  
3104 O Street, #221, Sacramento, CA 95816



NATURAL INVESTIGATIONS CO.

[WWW.NATURALINVESTIGATIONS.COM](http://WWW.NATURALINVESTIGATIONS.COM)

---

## 0. INTRODUCTION

### 0.1 Plan Requirements

This Site Management Plan was prepared to fulfill requirements of the State Water Resources Control Board's *Order WQ 2019-0001-DWQ General Waste Discharge Requirements for Discharges of Waste Associated with Cannabis Cultivation Activities* (General Order). The General Order requires the following items:

*Tier 1 and Tier 2 Dischargers shall submit and implement a Site Management Plan (Plan) that describes how the Discharger is implementing the best practical treatment or control (BPTC) measures listed in Attachment A. The Plan may include a schedule to achieve compliance, but all work must be completed by the onsets of winter period each year. (The due date does not relieve a Discharger from implementing the interim soil stabilization BPTC measures described in Attachment A.)*

This Site Management Plan follows the technical report guidance and plan outline of the General Order Attachment D.

This Plan should be periodically revised to update site conditions, cultivation operations, and site layout, and to document changes to BPTCs and the monitoring program. Site Management Plans should be written and revised by a qualified professional. The Regional Water Quality Control Board must be notified if there is a change in tier or risk status.

#### 0.1.2 Amendments

The Site Management Plan should be revised when:

- best practical treatment or control (BPTC) measures need to be revised to better meet the objectives of protecting water quality and other requirements of Order WQ 2019-0007-DWQ.
- there a violation of Order WQ 2019-0007-DWQ occurs; corrective actions should be documented and incorporated into this Plan.
- there is a change in the cultivation operation's size or Tier.

The General Order states:

*"Before making a material change in the activity, character, location, or volume of discharge, the Discharger shall notify the Regional Water Board Executive Officer. A material change includes, but is not limited to, any of the following:*

- *An increase in cultivation area (indoor or outdoor) beyond that specified in the application.*
- *A significant change in the operational activities that have the potential to increase or create a discharge to waters of the state (e.g., new green houses, change in wastewater disposal method, or new activity such as cannabis manufacturing).*

*The Regional Water Board Executive Officer may require resubmittal of application information, technical reports, or certifications."*

*"Any of the following changes must immediately be reported to the Regional Water Board Executive Officer:*

- A change in ownership of the parcel where the cultivation activities take place. The Discharger or owner must notify the succeeding owner of the existence of this General Order by letter, a copy of which shall immediately be forwarded to the Regional Water Board's Executive Officer.*
- A change of the permitted facility operator. The Discharger must notify the succeeding operator of the existence of this General Order by letter, a copy of which shall immediately be forwarded to the Regional Water Board's Executive Officer.*

iii. *A change in a third party representative. The Discharger shall notify the owner of the change by letter, a copy of which shall immediately be forwarded to the Regional Water Board's Executive Officer.*"

### 0.1.3 Record Retention

The General Order states:

*"The Discharger shall retain records of all monitoring information, including copies of all reports required by this General Order and records of all data used to complete the application for this General Order. Records shall be maintained for a minimum of three years from the date of the report or application. Records may be maintained electronically. This period may be extended during the course of any unresolved litigation regarding this discharge or when requested by the Regional Water Board's Executive Officer."*

### 0.1.4 Termination

Dischargers that want to terminate coverage under this General Order must submit a Notice of Termination (NOT), which is provided in Attachment C of the General Order. The NOT must include a Site Closure Report and a final monitoring report. At least 90 days prior to ending cannabis cultivation at the site, the Discharger shall submit a Site Closure Report that describes how the site will be decommissioned to prevent waste constituents, sediment, and/or turbidity discharges that degrade water quality. If construction activities are proposed in the Site Closure Report, a project implementation schedule shall be included in the report. The Site Closure Report shall also include a final MRP report. Attachment D of the General Order provides guidance on the contents of the Site Closure Report. The Regional Water Board reserves the right to inspect the site before approving an NOT. The General Order coverage is not terminated until the NOT is approved by the Regional Water Board. Until the NOT is approved, the Discharger is responsible for any permit fees associated with General Order enrollment, such as annual fees.

### 0.1.5 Report Preparers

A Qualified Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan Developer (QSD) and Certified Professional in Storm Water Quality (CPSWQ) registered through Enviro Cert International, Inc. was the senior author of this Plan:

- G.O. Graening, PhD (QSD #473, CPSWQ #691, QISP #597).

## 0.2 Project Location and Description

The Fuego Farms LLC Cannabis cultivation operation is located at 22750 Carancho Road, Temecula, on a 72-acre parcel (APN 933-020-005-6). The operation plans to cultivate 22,000 square feet of mature Cannabis canopy in mixed light in greenhouses. A fenced cultivation compound approx. 130,500 sq/ft in size will be created at frontage of the parcel and a new access road will be constructed. The Conceptual Grading Plan by Ventura Engineering Inland Inc. proposes a cut / fill volume of 23.248 cubic yards with zero import/export and an area of disturbance of 4.3 acres. Retaining walls will be constructed to maximize usable space. Seventeen greenhouse buildings will be constructed most greenhouse having 3,240 square feet (32 by 120 feet) of floor space. The cultivation will occur in semi-raised beds with coco-based soil. An above ground drip irrigation system will be employed; a 500-gallon mixing tank will allow the injection of nutrients into the irrigation system. A building will be constructed that is 5,000 square feet that will house an office, storage, drying, and packaging operations. The remaining space is graveled or

landscaped, and contains a parking lot with 7 spaces and an emergency vehicle turnaround. Stormwater control features may include biofiltration retention basins, side ditches, catch basins, etc.

### 0.3 Tier and Risk Designation

This cultivation operation is categorized as Tier 2 because the disturbed area is equal to greater than 1 acre. This cultivation operation has a total disturbed area of at least 4 acres. The definition of “disturbed area” is the sum of all the subareas used for Cannabis cultivation and processing, regardless of whether or not the subarea has disturbed soil.

This cultivation operation has a risk designation of Low Risk because the entire of the disturbed area is located on a slope less than 30 percent, maximum at 25 percent, and all of the disturbed area complies with the setback requirements.

Definitions of Tier and Risk from the General Order:

*“9. Dischargers must characterize their cultivation activities as described below and implement all applicable best practicable treatment or control (BPTC) measures described in Attachment A.*

*a. Dischargers that cultivate in multiple areas within a parcel or contiguous parcels shall add all the disturbed areas to calculate the total disturbed area. (For example, a Discharger that operates two cultivation areas that each disturbs 1,100 square feet must report a disturbance of 2,200 square feet and is not exempt from permitting requirements.)*

*b. Risk determination based on the site conditions shall be based on the greatest threat to water quality. (For example, if one of the 1,100 square feet cultivation areas is located on a slope greater than 30 percent, all the cultivation areas will be classified as moderate risk – see Table 1).*

*c. Dischargers that cultivate cannabis on non-contiguous parcels must obtain regulatory coverage for each parcel.”*

*Risk is defined in Table 1 as low, moderate, or high. Because moderate and high risk sites will require greater level of regulatory oversight, the fees for those risk levels are higher, reflecting the additional cost to achieve water quality protection.*

*i. Low Risk – Comply with the slope requirements and setbacks. Low risk sites are deemed to be a lower threat to water quality.*

*ii. Moderate Risk – Comply with the setback requirements but exist on slopes greater than 30 percent and less than 50 percent. The higher slopes will require implementation of more BPTC measures, more monitoring of their effectiveness, and more maintenance activities to ensure the BPTC measures are effective.*

*iii. High Risk – Are facilities that have any portion of their disturbed area located within the setback requirements, with the exception of activities authorized by CDFW with a Lake or Streambed Alteration Agreement or Clean Water Act section 404 permits, are classified as high risk and will be assessed the high-risk fee until the activities comply with the setback requirements. It is the Discharger’s responsibility to notify the Regional Water Board of compliance with the setback requirements to reassess the annual fee.*

Cultivators who enroll in the State Water Board’s Waste Discharge Requirements for Cannabis Cultivation Order WQ 2019-0001-DWQ must comply with the Minimum Riparian Setbacks, as summarized in the following table. The Project would be considered to have a significant adverse impact on jurisdictional water resources if it would be non-compliant with these requirements. The minimum riparian setbacks apply to all land disturbance, cannabis cultivation activities, and facilities (e.g., material

or vehicle storage, diesel powered pump locations, water storage areas, and chemical toilet placement). The nearest watercourse is a Class III; the project was designed to be setback at least 50 feet from this feature.

#### Minimum Riparian Setbacks

Common Name	Watercourse Class	Distance
Perennial watercourses, waterbodies (e.g. lakes, ponds), or springs	I	150 ft.
Intermittent watercourses or wetlands	II	100 ft.
Ephemeral watercourses	III	50 ft.
Man-made irrigation canals, water supply reservoirs, or hydroelectric canals that support native aquatic species	IV	Established riparian zone vegetation

## 0.4 Site Development and Site Expansion

The General Order's Attachment A has specific requirements for site development and site expansion, including, but not limited to, the following:

- A California Licensed Timber Operator shall be used if any commercial tree species are to be removed from the cannabis cultivation site. All timberland conversions shall be permitted and compliant with the Forest Practice Rules and CAL FIRE permitting requirements.
- Prior to commencing any cannabis land development or site expansion activities the cannabis cultivator shall secure a qualified biologist. The cannabis cultivator and the Qualified Biologist shall consult with CDFW and CAL FIRE and designate and mark a no-disturbance buffer to protect identified sensitive plant and wildlife species and communities.
- Prior to land disturbance activities for new or expanded cannabis cultivation activities, the cannabis cultivator shall perform a records search of potential Native American archeological or cultural resources (CHRIS potential discovery) at a California Historical Resources Information System (CHRIS) information center. A CHRIS qualified archaeologist shall perform the records search and document the results.
- In timberland areas, unless authorized by CAL FIRE or the Regional Water Board Executive Director, Cannabis cultivators shall not remove trees within 150 feet of fish bearing water bodies or 100 feet of aquatic habitat for non-fish aquatic species (e.g., aquatic insects) (Public Resources Code section 4526.)
- All grading and earthwork shall be done by a state-licensed C-12 Earthwork and Paving contractor, as applicable.

The General Order also states:

*"To avoid water quality degradation from erosion and sedimentation, land disturbance activities shall only occur between April 1 and November 15 of each year, unless authorized by a Regional Water Board Executive Officer-approved work plan and compliance schedule. Cannabis cultivators shall ensure land disturbance activities are completed and site stabilization measures are in place prior to the onset of fall and winter precipitation. All land disturbance activities between November 16 and March 31 shall be supervised by a Qualified Professional (such as an appropriately certified or registered Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan Practitioner)."*

## 1. SEDIMENT DISCHARGE BPTC MEASURES

### 1.1. Site Characteristics

1.1.1. Provide a map showing roads, vehicle parking areas, streams, stream crossings, cultivation site(s), disturbed areas, buildings, and other relevant site features.

This map is provided in the Exhibits section.

1.1.2. Describe the access road conditions including estimating vehicle traffic, road surface (e.g., paved, rocked, or bare ground), and maintenance activities. Describe how storm water is drained from the road (e.g., crowned, out slope, armored ditch, culverts, rolling dips, etc.).

The estimated vehicle traffic is 14 trips per day, which is based upon 7 employees making 7 commuting roundtrips. Additionally, vehicle deliveries add another 2 to 4 trips per week.

The Property contains the following roads (see exhibits):

- Carancho Road, a 2-lane, paved County Road
- private driveways, 1-lane, graveled
- ranch roads, 1-lane, dirt or gravel

Stormwater management of the road system consists primarily of roadside ditches and pipe culverts. Some road sections are well graveled. Additional gravel or roadbase cover is recommended in some locations. There are several water bars / rolling dips; several more are recommended. Roads will be maintained so that significant erosion does not occur. This may include wetting dusty roads, armoring with gravel or asphalt, patching holes, and maintaining drainage features such as water bars, culverts and side ditches.

Note that the General Order states: “*Site development and/or road building and maintenance activities associated with cannabis cultivation are subject to this General Order.*” The following guidebook should be referenced for road maintenance:

- Handbook for Forest, Ranch, & Rural Roads: A Guide for Planning, Designing, Constructing, Reconstructing, Upgrading, Maintaining, and Closing Wildland Roads. [available at: <http://www.pacificwatershed.com/sites/default/files/RoadsEnglishBOOKapril2015b.pdf>]

1.1.3. Describe any vehicle stream crossing including the type of crossing (e.g., bridge, culvert, low water, etc.).

This property has the following vehicle stream crossings:

- pipe culverts convey flows from Class III watercourses under roads.

1.1.3.1. For Region 1 Dischargers, identify, discuss, and locate on the site map any legacy waste discharge issues that exist on the property.

This cultivation operation is not in Region 1 (North Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board).

### 1.2. Erosion Prevention and Sediment Capture

*(Moderate Risk Tier 1 or Tier 2 Dischargers are required to submit a Site Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. Those Dischargers may refer to that plan rather than repeat it here)*



This cultivation operation is categorized as Moderate Risk, and will need to prepare a separate Site Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. Please refer to Exhibits section for Site Erosion and Control Plan by (Ventura Engineering Inland) dated January 25th 2021.

The General Order states:

*“To avoid water quality degradation from erosion and sedimentation, land disturbance activities shall only occur between April 1 and November 15 of each year, unless authorized by a Regional Water Board Executive Officer-approved work plan and compliance schedule. Cannabis cultivators shall ensure land disturbance activities are completed and site stabilization measures are in place prior to the onset of fall and winter precipitation. All land disturbance activities between November 16 and March 31 shall be supervised by a Qualified Professional (such as an appropriately certified or registered Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan Practitioner).”*

### **1.2.1. Erosion Prevention BPTC Measures**

*1.2.1.1. Describe the BPTC measures that have been, or will be implemented to prevent or limit erosion. Provide an implementation schedule for BPTC measures that have not yet been implemented. Identify the erosion prevention BPTC measures on a site map.*

*1.2.1.1.1. The description shall address physical BPTC measures, (e.g., placement of straw mulch, plastic covers, slope stabilization, soil binders, culvert outfall armoring, etc.) and biological BPTC measures (vegetation preservation/replacement, hydro seeding, etc.).*

The following areas and activities have the potential to cause erosion at this cultivation operation:

- unpaved access roads
- cutbanks or slopes greater than 10%
- recent grading or excavation operations
- soil import / soil staging
- structure installation process
- mass tilling

Erosion control, also referred to as soil stabilization, consists of source control measures that are designed to prevent soil particles from detaching and becoming transported in storm water runoff. Erosion control BMPs protect the soil surface by covering and/or binding soil particles. This project will implement the following practices for effective temporary and final erosion control during ground disturbance activities:

- Preserve existing vegetation where feasible;
- Implement effective wind erosion controls;
- Apply temporary erosion control to exposed areas; primarily, this will be straw mulch and fiber rolls. Reapply as necessary to maintain effectiveness;
- Implement temporary erosion control measures at regular intervals throughout the defined rainy season to achieve and maintain stability;
- Control erosion in concentrated flow paths by applying erosion control devices: primarily, this will be silt fence or gravel bags.

The following CASQA (2011) Construction BMP fact sheets should be consulted for proper implementation of BPTC measures:

- EC-2: Preservation of Existing Vegetation
- EC-3: Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-4: Hydroseeding
- EC-5: Soil Binders
- EC-6: Straw Mulch
- EC-7: Geotextiles & Mats
- EC-8: Wood Mulching
- EC-9: Earth Dikes & Drainage Swales

Erosion and sediment control diagrams are provided in the Exhibits section that indicate the recommended type and placement of erosion control devices for this facility.

Implementation schedule for erosion BPTC measures:

- implement erosion control BPTC measures for the rainy season by October 1<sup>st</sup> of every year
- replace erosion control devices (e.g. straw wattle) when they degrade
- deploy new erosion control devices after new ground disturbance activities
- stockpile erosion and sediment control devices before major storm events
- increase deployment of erosion control devices if erosion increases
- implement erosion control BPTC measures for the dry season by April 1<sup>st</sup> of every year
- during dry season, implement wind erosion BPTC measures.

### **1.2.2. Sediment Control BPTC Measures**

*1.2.2.1. Describe the BPTC measures that have been, or will be implemented to capture sediment that has been eroded. Provide an implementation schedule for BPTC measures that have not yet been implemented. Identify the sediment control BPTC measures on a site map.*

*1.2.2.1.1. The description shall address physical BPTC measures, (e.g., placement of silt fences, fiber rolls, or settling ponds/areas, etc.) and biological BPTC measures (vegetated outfalls, hydro seeding, etc.).*

Sediment controls are structural measures that are intended to complement and enhance the selected erosion control measures and reduce sediment discharges from active construction areas. Sediment controls are designed to intercept and settle out soil particles that have been detached and transported by the force of water. This project will incorporate sediment control measures as needed.

The following CASQA (2011) Construction BMP fact sheets should be consulted for proper implementation of BPTC measures:

- SE-1: Silt Fence
- SE-3: Sediment Trap
- SE-5: Fiber Rolls
- SE-6: Gravel Bag Berm
- SE-8: Sand Bag Barrier
- SE-9: Straw Bale Barrier

Erosion and sediment control diagrams are provided in the Exhibits section that indicate the recommended type and placement of sediment control devices.

Implementation schedule for sediment BPTC measures:

- implement sediment control BPTC measures for the rainy season by October 1<sup>st</sup> of every year
- replace sediment control devices (e.g. silt fence, gravel bags) when they degrade
- clean / maintain sediment control devices after storm events
- deploy new sediment control devices after new ground disturbance activities
- stockpile erosion and sediment control devices before major storm events
- increase deployment of sediment control devices if sedimentation increases
- implement sediment control BPTC measures for the dry season by April 1<sup>st</sup> of every year

### **1.2.3. Maintenance Activities - Erosion Prevention and Sediment Control**

*1.2.3.1. Describe how the erosion prevention and sediment control BPTC measures will be monitored and maintained to protect water quality.*

*1.2.3.2. Describe how any captured sediment will be either stabilized in place, excavated and stabilized on-site, or removed from the site.*

One or more observation stations for visual monitoring of sediment pollution were established at this facility (see Exhibits). This station should be inspected regularly as part of the monitoring plan. If sediment is transported, the erosion control plan should be reevaluated, and changes made to increase the effectiveness of erosion and sediment BTPC measures.

The following are recommended maintenance activities:

- for drainage swales, remove any sediment buildup and distribute sediment lightly over vegetated areas to increase soil fertility
- keep vegetation trimmed in drainage swales so that flow is not overly restricted
- for sediment traps, remove any sediment buildup and distribute sediment lightly over vegetated areas to increase soil fertility
- remove any litter from drainage swales and sediment traps, and dispose of litter properly
- add gravel to unpaved roads, as needed, to armor them
- add seed mix (native grass and wildflower species) to bare areas to armor soil with vegetation

### **1.2.4. Erosion Control BPTC Measures**

*Describe the interim soil stabilization, if applicable and long-term BPTC measures implemented to prevent sediment transport at each identified disturbed area(s) and improperly constructed features.*

See Section 1.2.1 and 1.2.2 of this Plan for interim soil stabilization measures. Long-term BPTC measures consist of some combination of the following actions:

- graveling unpaved roads
- vegetating drainage swales
- adding vegetated buffer strips to the edges of parking lots and material storage areas
- adding water bars to road sections
- replacing rock fords and low-water crossings with bridges that span channels
- employing rainwater catchment devices
- adding stormwater detention basins

Note that the General Order has the following restriction on use of plastics:

*“To minimize the risk of ensnaring and strangling wildlife, cannabis cultivators shall not use synthetic (e.g., plastic or nylon) monofilament netting materials for erosion control or any cannabis cultivation activities. This prohibition includes photo- or bio-degradable plastic netting.”*

## 2. FERTILIZER, PESTICIDE, HERBICIDE, AND RODENTICIDE BPTC MEASURES

2.1. Provide a summary table that identifies the products used at the site, when they are delivered to the site, how they are stored, and used at the site. If products are not consumed during the growing season, describe how they are removed from the site or stored to prevent discharge over the winter season.

Table of Fertilizers and Pesticides Used On Site

Product	Delivery Details	Storage Details	Use Details
<b>Granular fertilizers/soil amendments</b>			
amended soil	delivery truck transports and dumps soil in staging area	un-used soil is tarped	amended soil is tilled in to raised beds
granular fertilizer, 5 to 50 pound bags	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
2,000 lbs. Hydrolyzed Fish powder	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
2,000 lbs. high potassium fish powder	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
400 lbs. mycosis mycorrhizae powder	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
400 lbs. azomite	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
400 lbs. rock phosphate	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
500 lbs. glacial rock dust	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
500 lbs. green sand	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
1,000 lbs. alfalfa meal	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
500 lbs. high phosphorous bat guano	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
500 lbs. dolomite lime	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
500 lbs. oyster shell	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
500 lbs. bat guano high nitrogen	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
1,000 lbs. seabird guano pellets 12-12-2.5	transported by staff by truck as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is tilled in to raised beds or applied as top dressing
<b>Liquid fertilizers/soil amendments</b>			
400 gallons molasses	transported by staff by car as needed	un-used fertilizer is stored in shed	fertilizer is mixed with water in mixing tank and distributed by driplines
400 gallons liquid Karma			
400 gallons humic acid			
500 gallons Ca-Mg			

<b>Pesticides</b>			
300 lbs. sulfur powder	transported by staff by car as needed	un-used product is stored in shed	sprayed by hand or backpack sprayer
300 gallons Spinosad	transported by staff by car as needed	un-used product is stored in shed	sprayed by hand or backpack sprayer
200 lbs. diatomaceous earth	transported by staff by car as needed	un-used product is stored in shed	sprayed by hand or backpack sprayer

The following material handling and waste management measures will be implemented:

- Prevent or minimize handling of chemical/industrial materials or wastes that can be readily mobilized by contact with stormwater during a storm event;
- Contain all stored non-solid chemical/industrial materials or wastes (e.g., particulates, powders, paper, etc.) that can be transported or dispersed by the wind or contact with stormwater during handling;
- Cover waste disposal containers and material storage containers that contain chemical/industrial materials when not in use;
- Divert run-on and stormwater generated from within the facility away from all stockpiled materials;
- Clean all spills of chemical/industrial materials or wastes that occur during handling in accordance with the spill response procedures; and
- Observe and clean as appropriate, any outdoor material or waste handling equipment or containers that can be contaminated by contact with chemical/industrial materials or wastes.

The following CASQA (2014) Industrial and Commercial BMP fact sheets should be consulted for proper implementation of BPTC measures:

- SC-20: Vehicle and Equipment Fueling
- SC-21: Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning
- SC-22: Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance and Repair
- SC-31: Outdoor Liquid Container Storage
- SC-32: Outdoor Equipment Operations
- SC-33: Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials
- SC-34: Waste Handling and Disposal.
- BG-40 Landscape Maintenance.

**2.2. Provide a site map that locates storage locations.**

This map is provided in the Exhibits section.

**2.3. Describe how bulk fertilizers and chemical concentrates are stored, mixed, applied, and how empty containers are disposed.**

Chemicals will be used according to the instructions on the label or Material Safety Data Sheet. Chemicals will be stored in the metal building or stormproof shed or Conex container so that stormwater

is not contaminated. Chemicals will be properly labeled and open containers sealed when stored. Personal protective equipment will be used by staff when handling fertilizers and other chemicals, such as safety glasses, gloves, respiratory mask, boots, and long pants and long-sleeved shirt.

Liquid or granular fertilizers can be mixed with water in mixing tanks; plastic tubing and driplines can then be used to gravity-feed the water / fertilizer mixture to the planting stations. Fertilizers and soil amendments can also be applied directly to the planting stations by shovel or by using a spray tank mounted to a backpack, all-terrain vehicle, golf cart, or a garden cart.

Fertilizers will be stored in the metal building or a stormproof shed or Conex container so that stormwater is not contaminated. Fertilizers will be properly labeled and open containers sealed when stored. Personal protective equipment will be used by staff when handling fertilizers and other chemicals, such as safety glasses, gloves, dust mask or respirator, boots, and pants and long-sleeved shirt. Fertilizers will be handled and applied according to their instructions. See Material Safety Data Sheets in the Appendix for specific information. The following fertilizer application and storage protocols will be implemented:

- Comply with all label directions;
- Store chemicals in a secure building or shed to prevent access by wildlife;
- Contain any chemical leaks and immediately clean up any spills;
- Apply the minimum amount of product necessary;
- Prevent offsite drift;
- Do not apply chemicals when pollinators are present;
- Do not spray directly to surface water or allow chemical product to drift to surface water.

#### **2.4. Describe procedures for spill prevention and cleanup.**

The General Order states:

*“The cannabis cultivator shall immediately report any significant hazardous material release or spill that causes a film or sheen on the water’s surface, leaves a sludge or emulsion beneath the water’s surface, or a release or threatened release of a hazardous material that may potentially discharge to waters of the state, to the California Office of Emergency Services at (800) 852-7550 and the local Unified Program Agency. The cannabis cultivator shall also immediately notify the appropriate Regional Water Board and CDFW of the release.”*

The following spill and leak prevention and response measures will be implemented:

- Establish procedures and/or controls to minimize spills and leaks;
- Develop and implement spill and leak response procedures to prevent industrial materials from discharging through the stormwater conveyance system. Spilled or leaked industrial materials will be cleaned promptly and disposed of properly;
- Identify and describe all necessary and appropriate spill and leak response equipment, location(s) of spill and leak response equipment, and spill or leak response equipment maintenance procedures; and
- Identify and train appropriate spill and leak response personnel.

Spill clean-up materials, material safety data sheets, a material inventory, and emergency contact numbers will be maintained and stored in the office / metal building.

The following preventative maintenance measures will be implemented:

- Fueling in the designated area
- Daily inspection of mechanized equipment for lubricant and fuel leaks;

- Identify all equipment and systems used outdoors that may spill or leak pollutants;
- Regularly observe the identified equipment and systems to detect leaks, or identify conditions that may result in the development of leaks;
- Establish an appropriate schedule for maintenance of identified equipment and systems; and
- Establish procedures for prompt maintenance and repair of equipment, and maintenance of systems when conditions exist that may result in the development of spills or leaks.
- Drip pans or absorbent pads will be used for all vehicle and equipment maintenance activities that involve grease, oil, solvents, or other vehicle fluids.

The following CASQA (2014) Industrial and Commercial BMP fact sheets should be consulted for proper implementation of BPTC measures:

- SC-11: Spill Prevention, Control, and Cleanup
- SC-20: Vehicle and Equipment Fueling
- SC-21: Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning
- SC-22: Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance and Repair
- SC-31: Outdoor Liquid Container Storage
- SC-33: Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials
- SC-34: Waste Handling and Disposal
- BG-40 Landscape Maintenance.



### 3. PETROLEUM PRODUCT BPTC MEASURES

**3.1. Provide a summary table that identifies the products used at the site, when they are delivered to the site, how they are stored, and used at the site. If products are not consumed during the growing season, describe how they are removed from the site or stored to prevent discharge over the winter season.**

**Table of Petroleum Products Used On Site**

Product	Delivery Details	Storage Details	Use Details
gasoline, 1 to 5 gallon plastic jugs	transported by staff from gas station to garden by car	jugs are stored in stormproof shed	small engines are fueled by hand using fuel spout on plastic jug
diesel, 500-gallon above ground storage tank	a fuel delivery truck fills up tank	above ground storage tank	Fuel dispenser fills tanks of mobile equipment
lubricant oil, 1 quart plastic jugs	transported by staff by car as needed	un-used oil is stored in stormproof shed	oil is poured by hand into oil tube using funnel
lubricant grease, cartridge	transported by staff by car as needed	un-used grease is stored in stormproof shed	grease cartridge is loaded into caulk gun and squirted into nipples

The following mechanized equipment is used that requires fuels and lubricants: Bobcat, skid steer; pickup trucks; and quad ATVs. Gasoline in 1 to 5 gallon containers is used to fuel small engines. These chemicals are stored in the metal building. No significant quantities of petroleum products are currently used on the Project Area. A 500-gallon above-ground storage tank may be installed in the future. All large equipment fueling and maintenance operations will occur at service stations outside of the Project Area. Should vehicle and equipment fueling or maintenance be performed in the Project Area, Best Management Practices (BMPs) will be implemented, and are specified later in this Plan.

The following CASQA (2014) Industrial and Commercial BMP fact sheets should be consulted for proper implementation of BPTC measures:

- SC-20: Vehicle and Equipment Fueling
- SC-21: Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning
- SC-22: Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance and Repair

**3.2. Provide a site map that locates storage locations.**

This map is provided in the Exhibits section.

**3.3. Describe how fuels, lubricants, and other petroleum products are stored, mixed, applied, and empty containers are disposed.**

Fuels and lubricants are stored in the metal building or a stormproof shed. Empty containers are placed in trash bins and hauled away by staff in trucks or by private trash hauling service.

**3.4. Describe procedures for spill prevention and cleanup.**

See Section 2.4 of this Plan.

## 4. TRASH/REFUSE, AND DOMESTIC WASTEWATER BPTC MEASURES

### 4.1. Describe the types of trash/refuse that will be generated at the site. Describe how the material is contained and properly disposed of.

The following are potential sources of solid waste that may be generated during cultivation operations:

- growing medium waste: soil, soil amendments, mulch, humus, vermiculite, perlite, etc.
- landscape maintenance: trimmings, treated lumber, fencing
- irrigation system waste: black poly tubing, PVC pipes and fittings, hoses, plastic mixing tanks, etc.
- Cannabis processing waste: stems and root balls, scissors, knives, saws, etc.
- packaging material from vendors: pallets, plastic bags, cloth bags, plastic jugs and buckets, etc.
- trash from staff: food packaging, water bottles, toilet paper, cigarette butts, etc.
- feces.

Waste bins / containers are located at the entrance to the cultivation compound and inside the metal building. The locations of waste bins / containers are shown in the Exhibits. Waste will be hauled to an appropriate licensed facility by a private waste hauling contractor, such as Waste Management, Inc., or by cultivation operation staff. Recyclables will be segregated from the solid waste and deposited in an appropriate recycling facility. Recyclables such as scrap metal, cardboard, glass, metal and plastic containers, and newspaper can be unloaded at a recycling drop-off center. Yard waste, green waste, and other compostable materials will be segregated from the solid waste and shredded and composted onsite for reuse as mulch or as a soil amendment, or deposited at an appropriate transfer facility. Compost and recyclable wood can be dropped off at any compost where it is processed as new compost. Household toxic materials will be segregated from the solid waste and disposed of at a County facility.

The following material handling and waste management measures will be implemented:

- Prevent or minimize handling of chemical/industrial materials or wastes that can be readily mobilized by contact with stormwater during a storm event;
- Contain all stored non-solid chemical/industrial materials or wastes (e.g., particulates, powders, shredded paper, etc.) that can be transported or dispersed by the wind or contact with stormwater during handling;
- Cover waste disposal containers and material storage containers that contain chemical/industrial materials when not in use;
- Divert run-on and stormwater generated from within the facility away from all stockpiled materials;
- Clean all spills of chemical/industrial materials or wastes that occur during handling in accordance with the spill response procedures); and
- Observe and clean as appropriate, any outdoor material or waste handling equipment or containers that can be contaminated by contact with chemical/industrial materials or wastes.

BMPs will be implemented to minimize storm water contact with waste materials and prevent waste discharges (Construction BMP WM-5 Solid Waste Management). Solid waste should be removed and disposed off-site at least monthly at a proper receiving facility. Any hazardous wastes will be stored in the metal building or in shipping containers or sheds. Hazardous wastes will be appropriately and clearly marked in containers and segregated from other non-waste materials.

Growing media waste will be reduced or eliminated by composting and blending old soils with new soils and amendments. No growing media is expected to be disposed offsite.

Growing media (that is biodegradable) can be reduced in volume yearly because it is partially absorbed by the plants and metabolized by soil organisms (bacteria, fungi, invertebrates). Green waste, primarily

cannabis root balls and stems, can be chipped and mulched and blended back into the planting soil. Vegetative waste staging areas and compost piles are typically located inside the secured, fenced cultivation compound(s). BMPs will be employed to ensure that these piles do not contaminate stormwater or cause nuisance dust or odor issues.

Any growing media that cannot be composted or reused will need to be hauled offsite and disposed in a licensed facility.

**4.1.1. Provide a site map that locates the trash/refuse storage locations.**

This map is provided in the Exhibits section.

**4.2. Describe the number of employees, visitors, or residents at the site.**

The following is a list of persons typically present on the Property:

- employees, typically 7/day
- visitors, typically 0/day
- residents, typically 0/day

Total persons typically on the Property is thus: 7 persons per day.

**4.2.1. Describe the types of domestic wastewater generated at the site (e.g., household generated wastewater or chemical toilet).**

There are currently no toilets on the parcel because the cultivation operation has not yet been established and there are no permanent residents. There will be 2 flush toilets in the metal building / processing facility; chemical toilets may be rented during peak work periods.

Assuming about 10 gallons per person per day (5 flushes, 2 gallons / flush), the following is the estimated toilet waste load:

- for normal operations with 7 employees = 7 gallons per day
- for peak labor (harvesting, trimming) with 20 employees = 200 gallons per day.

**4.2.2. Describe how the domestic wastewater is disposed.**

**4.2.2.1. Permitted onsite wastewater treatment system (e.g., septic tank and leach lines).**

No septic systems exist on the Property. Chemical toilets will be used during construction. Flush toilets will be installed in the metal building when this facility is constructed. Wastewater will be disposed via a permitted septic system. The location of the septic tank and leachfield are shown in the exhibits.

**4.2.2.2. Chemical toilets or holding tank. If so, provide the name of the servicing company and the frequency of service.**

A portable toilet may be rented and maintained for facility staff. The servicing company is: \_\_\_\_\_ . The frequency of service is: \_\_\_\_\_ (weekly; monthly; as needed).

**4.2.2.3. Outhouse, pit privy, or similar. Use of this alternative requires approval from the Regional Water Board Executive Officer; include the approval from the Executive Officer and any conditions imposed for use of this alternative.**

There are no outhouses, pit privies, or similar alternative disposal systems on this property.

*4.2.2.3.1. Provide a site map that locates any domestic wastewater treatment, storage, or disposal area.*

This map is provided in the Exhibits section.

## 5. Winterization BPTC Measures

### 5.1. Describe activities that will be performed to winterize the site and prevent discharges of waste. The description should address all the issues listed above.

The following general winterization BPTC measures will be implemented:

- Implement effective wind erosion controls;
- Provide effective stabilization for all disturbed soils and other erodible areas prior to a forecasted storm event;
- Maintain effective perimeter controls and stabilize all site entrances and exits to sufficiently control discharges of erodible materials from discharging or being tracked off the site;
- Divert run-on and stormwater generated from within the facility away from all erodible materials; and
- If sediment traps or basins are installed, ensure that they are working properly and emptied of accumulated sediment and litter.

Silt fence, sediment traps, straw wattles, straw mulch are the primary erosion control measures that will be employed. Gravel bags should be stockpiled and deployed as needed on steeper road sections if erosion is evident.

The following CASQA (2014) Industrial and Commercial BMP fact sheets should be consulted for proper implementation of BPTC measures:

- SC-33: Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials
- SC-40: Contaminated or Erodible Surfaces
- TC-30: Vegetated Swale
- TC-31: Vegetated Buffer Strip

### 5.2. Describe maintenance of all drainage or sediment capture features (e.g., drainage culverts, drainage trenches, settling ponds, etc.) to remove debris, soil blockages, and ensure adequate capacity exists.

Where sediment collects, sediment traps should be installed and maintained. Excess sediment should be spread on thinly onto vegetation or composted. Vegetated swales and buffer strips should be mowed regularly and trash and debris removed. Sufficient quantities of temporary sediment control materials will be maintained on-site throughout the rainy season, to allow implementation of temporary erosion and sediment controls in the event of predicted rain, and for rapid response to failures or emergencies.

A visual monitoring (inspection) program is recommended, and an inspection would ideally be performed prior to each qualifying rain event and contain the following focal areas:

- All storm water drainage areas to identify any spills, leaks, or uncontrolled pollutant sources
- All BMPs to identify whether they have been properly implemented
- Any storm water storage and containment areas to detect leaks and ensure maintenance of adequate freeboard

During-rain event visual observations (inspections) are recommended at least once each 24-hour period during extended storm events. After each qualifying rain event, the inspector should conduct a post-rain event visual inspection to identify whether BMPs were adequately designed, implemented, and effective, and identify any needed revisions to BMPs or deployed devices.

**5.3. Describe any revegetation activities that will occur either at the beginning or end of the precipitation season.**

Revegetation activities are typically required after the installation of new or modified operational features, such as construction of new roads, terracing of slopes, or the expansion and grading of cultivation areas.

This cultivation operation does not require revegetation activities because no new or modified operational features were installed. Should revegetation be necessary, the following procedures will be followed:

- the original contours should be restored
- soil should be decompacted and amended with fertilizer, as needed
- a native grass and wildflower seed mix should be broadcast by hand
- the seed mix should be covered with straw mulch
- provide supplemental water for germination, as needed.

**5.4. If any BPTC measure cannot be completed before November 15 of any year, contact the Regional Water Board to establish a compliance schedule.**

All BPTC measures can be completed before November 15<sup>th</sup>.

**5.5. For Region 1 Dischargers, describe any activities that will be performed to address legacy waste discharge issues. Region 6 Dischargers should consult with Regional Water Board staff to confirm if any other activities in addition to BPTCs are necessary to address legacy waste discharge issues.**

This cultivation operation is not in Region 1 or in Region 6.

---

## 6.0 MONITORING AND REPORTING PROGRAM

### 6.1 Required Monitoring and Reporting

Attachment B of the General Order describes requirements the monitoring and reporting requirements for all cannabis cultivation sites. There are monthly monitoring requirements for site maintenance and for stormwater runoff.

#### Sampling Requirements

All samples shall be representative of the volume and nature of the discharge or matrix of material sampled. The name of the sampler, sample type (grab or composite), time, date, location, bottle type, and any preservative used for each sample shall be recorded on the sample chain of custody form. The chain of custody form must contain all custody information including date, time, and to whom samples were relinquished. If composite samples are collected, the basis for sampling (time or flow weighted) shall be approved by Regional Water Board staff.

Field test instruments (such as those used to test pH, dissolved oxygen, and electrical conductivity) may be used provided that they are used by a California Environmental Laboratory Program certified laboratory or:

1. The user is trained in proper use and maintenance of the instruments;
2. The instruments are field calibrated prior to monitoring events at the frequency recommended by the manufacturer;
3. Instruments are serviced by the manufacturer or authorized representative at the recommended frequency; and
4. Field calibration reports are maintained and available for at least three years.

#### Reporting Requirements

In reporting monitoring data, the Discharger shall arrange the data in tabular form so that the date, monitoring parameter, and reported results are readily discernible. The data shall be summarized to clearly illustrate compliance status as applicable. The results of any monitoring done more frequently than required at the locations specified in the MRP shall be reported in the next regularly scheduled monitoring report and shall be included in calculations as appropriate. The State Water Board or Regional Water Board may require the Discharger to electronically submit monitoring reports using the State Water Board's California Integrated Water Quality System (CIWQS) program Internet web site or alternative database. Electronic submittal procedures will be provided when directed to begin electronic

#### Annual Report

Annual Reports shall be submitted to the Regional Water Board by March 1 following the year being monitored. For example, the monitoring report for activities conducted in the year 2019 is due on March 1, 2020. The Annual Report shall include the following:

1. Facility Status, Site Maintenance Status, and Storm Water Runoff Monitoring.
2. The name and contact information for the person responsible for operation, maintenance, and monitoring.

A letter transmitting the annual report shall accompany each report. The letter shall summarize the numbers and severity of violations found during the reporting period, and actions taken or planned to correct the violations and prevent future violations. The transmittal letter shall contain the following penalty of perjury statement and shall be signed by the Discharger or the Discharger's authorized agent:



*"I certify under penalty of law that I have personally examined and am familiar with the information submitted in this document and all attachments and that, based on my inquiry of those individuals immediately responsible for obtaining the information, I believe that the information is true, accurate, and complete. I am aware that there are significant penalties for submitting false information, including the possibility of fine and imprisonment."*

The Discharger shall submit notices, technical reports, and annual reports to appropriate Regional Water Board where the permitted activity is taking place. The appropriate Regional Water Board office and e-mail information is provided on the application receipt (e.g., notice of exemption, Notice of Receipt, Notice of Applicability, etc.). The information is also available by entering the location address in the web tool located at: <[http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/waterboards\\_map.shtml](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/waterboards_map.shtml)>.

**FACILITY STATUS**

Dischargers that are classified as Tier 1 or Tier 2 facilities shall report the following as shown in Table B1:

**Table B1: Monitoring Requirements**

Monitoring Requirement	Description
Winterization Measures Implemented	Report winterization procedures implemented, any outstanding measures, and the schedule for completion.
Tier Status Confirmation	Report any change in the tier status. (Stabilization of disturbed areas may change the tier status of a facility. Contact the Regional Water Board if a change in status is appropriate.)
Third Party Identification	Report any change in third party status as appropriate.
Nitrogen Application (if cultivation area or aggregate of cultivation areas exceeds one acre)	Report monthly and annual total nitrogen use for bulk, solid, and liquid forms of nitrogen. Provide the data as pounds per canopy acre per time (month or year) as described in Attachment D, <i>Nitrogen Management Plan</i> .  If plant tissue was collected to determine limited nitrogen availability, the results shall be submitted.

**SITE MAINTENANCE STATUS**

Dischargers that are classified as Tier 1 or Tier 2, and are characterized as a moderate or high risk, shall perform the following additional monitoring as shown in Table B2.

**Table B2: Moderate or High-Risk Monitoring Requirements**

<b>Observations</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Monitoring Frequency</b>
Surface Water Runoff	Report any conditions of surface water runoff, including location, duration, source of runoff (irrigation water, storm water, etc.).	Monthly
Soil Erosion Control	Report any indications of soil erosion (e.g., gully, turbid water discharge, landslide, etc.).	Monthly
Sediment Capture	Report the status of sediment capture measures (e.g., silt fence, fiber rolls, settling basin, etc.).	Monthly
Erosion/Sediment Capture Maintenance	Report maintenance activities to maintain the effectiveness of erosion control and sediment capture measures (e.g., reinstallation of straw mulch, hydroseeding, tarp placement, removal or stabilization of sediment captured, removal of settled sediment in a basin, etc.).	Monthly
Stabilization of Disturbed Areas	Dischargers characterized as high risk (with any portion of the disturbed area within the setbacks), shall provide a status report describing activities performed to stabilize the disturbed area within the setback.	Monthly
Material(s) Storage Erosion/Spills Prevention	Report materials delivered or stored at the site that could degrade water quality if discharged off-site (e.g., potting soil, manure, chemical fertilizer, gasoline, herbicides, pesticides, etc.).	Monthly
Holding Tank, Septic Tank, or Chemical Toilet Servicing	Report the dates, activity, and name of the servicing company for servicing holding tanks or chemical toilets.	Monthly

### STORM WATER RUNOFF MONITORING

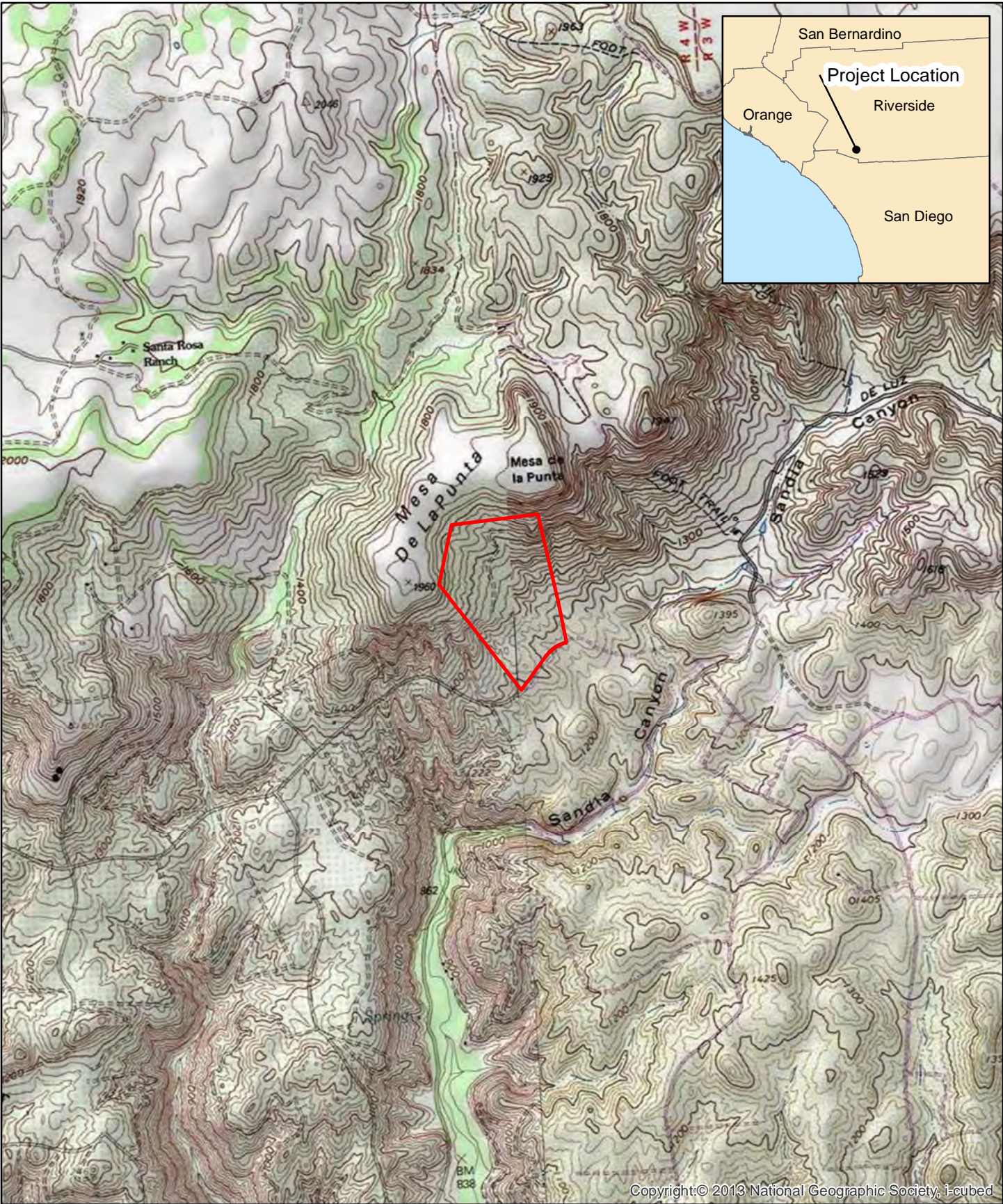
Dischargers that are classified as Tier 1 or Tier 2, and are characterized as a moderate or high risk, shall perform the following monitoring as described in Table B3. Note the following information relating to Table B3:

1. Constituents shall be monitored with a calibrated instrument.
2. Samples shall be representative of storm water discharging from the disturbed area. Additional samples may be required to adequately characterize the discharge from all areas.
3. Monitoring shall be performed during all months in which activity is occurring at the site until winterization is complete. Monitoring is not required after winterization is complete for unoccupied sites during winter months.

**Table B3: Stormwater Runoff Monitoring Requirements**

Constituent	Frequency	Monitoring Frequency
Turbidity	Once per calendar month when precipitation exceeds 0.25 inch per day or when storm water runoff from the site is generated.	All months until winterization procedures are completed.
pH	Once per calendar month when precipitation amount is forecast to exceed 0.25 inch per day.	All months until winterization procedures are completed.

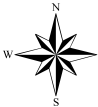
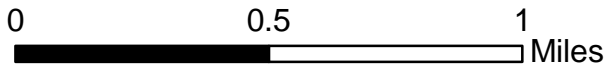
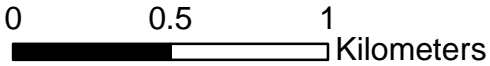
## EXHIBITS



Copyright: © 2013 National Geographic Society, i-cubed



Parcel Location



1:24,000

22750 Carancho Road  
Parcel Location Map



NATURAL  
INVESTIGATIONS  
COMPANY

CONCEPTUAL GRADING PLAN

APN: 933-020-005-6

EARTHWORK

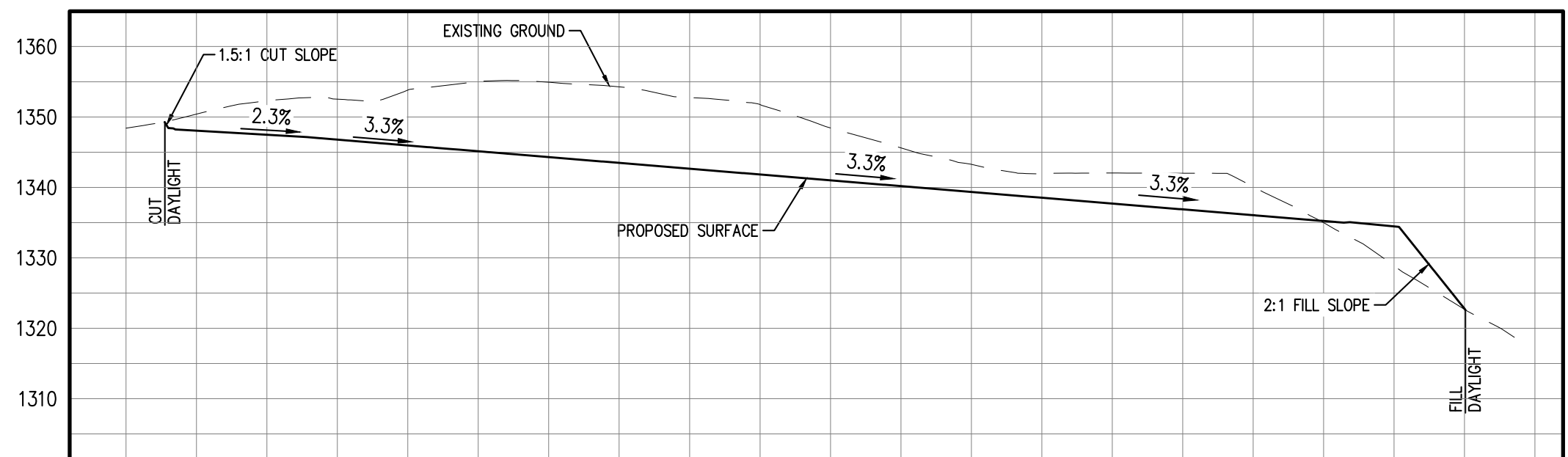
CUT: 22,761 CY  
 FILL: 22,761 CY

AREA OF DISTURBANCE

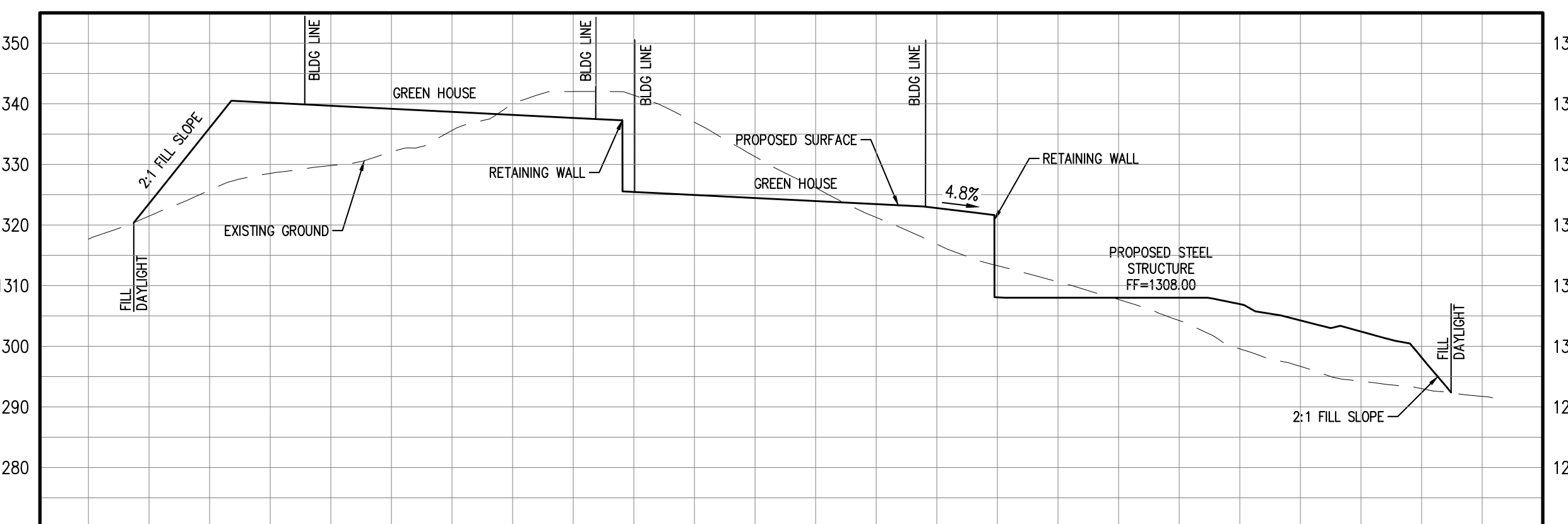
185,916 S.F. (4.27 ACRES)

DRIVEWAY LENGTH

481 LF



SECTION A-A  
 HORIZONTAL SCALE: 1"=50'  
 VERTICAL SCALE: 1"=20'



SECTION B-B  
 HORIZONTAL SCALE: 1"=50'  
 VERTICAL SCALE: 1"=20'



WORK CONTAINED WITHIN THESE PLANS SHALL NOT COMMENCE UNTIL AN ENCROACHMENT PERMIT AND/OR A GRADING PERMIT HAS BEEN ISSUED.

MARK	BY	DATE	REVISIONS	APPR.	COUNTY

SEAL-COUNTY

SEAL-ENGINEER

ENGINEER OF WORK  
 Ventura Engineering Inland, INC  
 27393 Ynez Road, Suite 159  
 Temecula, CA 92591  
 Phone: (951)252-7632  
 wilfredo@venturaengineeringinland.com

*Wilfredo Ventura*  
 DATE 01/25/21

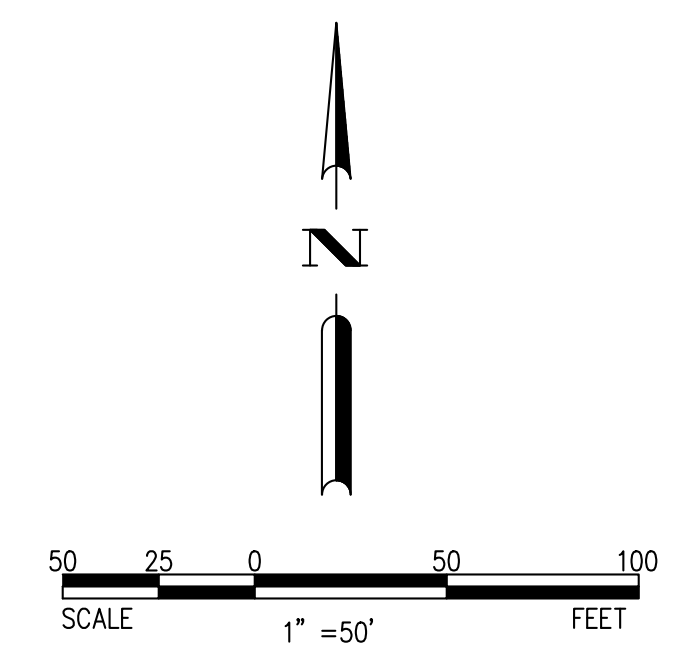
WILFREDO S.D. VENTURA  
 RCE 66532 EXP. 06/30/22

BENCHMARK:

DRAWN VEY  
 DESIGNED VEY  
 CHECKED WV  
 SCALE AS SHOWN  
 JOB NUMBER VEI 2020-200

COUNTY OF RIVERSIDE  
 CANNABIS CULTIVATION FACILITY  
 APN 933-020-005-6  
 CONCEPTUAL GRADING PLAN

SHEET NO. 1  
 OF 2 SHEETS  
 FILE NO.



# EROSION CONTROL NOTES

- A. IN CASE OF EMERGENCY, CALL **RAY & STACY MORAN** (RESPONSIBLE PERSON) AT (24-HOUR PHONE NUMBER).
- B. THE UNDERSIGNED CIVIL ENGINEER WILL REVIEW PLACEMENT OF EROSION CONTROL AND INSURE THAT WORK IS IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPROVED PLANS. WILFREDO S.D. VENTURA RCE. NO. 66532 EXP. DATE: 06-30-18
- C. A STANDBY CREW FOR EMERGENCY WORK SHALL BE AVAILABLE AT ALL TIMES DURING THE RAINY SEASON, OCTOBER 15 THROUGH APRIL 15. NECESSARY MATERIALS SHALL BE AVAILABLE ON-SITE AND STOCKPILED AT CONVENIENT LOCATIONS TO FACILITATE RAPID CONSTRUCTION OF TEMPORARY DEVICES OR TO REPAIR ANY DAMAGED EROSION CONTROL MEASURE WHEN RAIN IS IMMINENT.
- D. EROSION CONTROL DEVICES SHALL NOT BE MOVED OR MODIFIED WITHOUT THE APPROVAL OF THE COUNTY INSPECTOR/ ENGINEER.
- E. ALL REMOVABLE PROTECTIVE EROSION CONTROL DEVICES SHOWN SHALL BE IN PLACE AT THE END OF EACH WORKING DAY WHEN THE FIVE (5) DAY RAIN PROBABILITY FORECAST EXCEEDS FORTY PERCENT (40%).
- F. AFTER A RAINSTORM, ALL SILT AND DEBRIS SHALL BE REMOVED FROM CHECK BERMS AND DESILTING BASINS. ANY GRADED SURFACE PROTECTION MEASURES DAMAGED DURING A RAINSTORM SHALL ALSO BE IMMEDIATELY REPAIRED.
- G. FILL SLOPES AT THE TRACT PERIMETER MUST DRAIN AWAY FROM THE TOP OF THE SLOPE AT THE CONCLUSION OF EACH WORKING DAY.
- H. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL BE RESPONSIBLE AND HAVE POSTED ON THE SITE TO PREVENT PUBLIC TRESPASS INTO AREAS WHERE WATER IS IMPOUNDED WHENEVER THE DEPTH EXCEEDS TWO (2) FEET OR CREATES A HAZARDOUS CONDITION.

## ATTACHMENTS & BMP'S

THE FOLLOWING BMP'S AS OUTLINED IN, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE CALIFORNIA STORMWATER BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES HANDBOOK, JANUARY 2003, OR THE LATEST REVISED EDITION, MAY APPLY DURING THE CONSTRUCTION OF THIS PROJECT (ADDITIONAL MEASURES MAY BE REQUIRED IF DEEMED APPROPRIATE BY THE PROJECT ENGINEER OR BUILDING OFFICIAL)

- EROSION CONTROL**  
 EC1- SCHEDULING  
 EC2- PRESERVATION OF EXISTING VEGETATION  
 EC4- HYDROSEEDING  
 EC5- SOIL BINDERS  
 EC9- DRAINAGE SWALES  
 EC10- STORM DRAIN INLET PROTECTION

- WIND EROSION CONTROL**  
 WE1- WIND EROSION CONTROL

- TEMPORARY SEDIMENT CONTROL**

- SE1- SILT FENCE  
 SE5- FIBER ROLL  
 SE6- GRAVEL BAG BERM  
 SE7- STREET SWEEPING AND VACUUMING  
 SE10- STORM DRAIN INLET PROTECTION

- EQUIPMENT TRACKING CONTROL**  
 TC1- STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE EXIT

## NON-STORMWATER MANAGEMENT

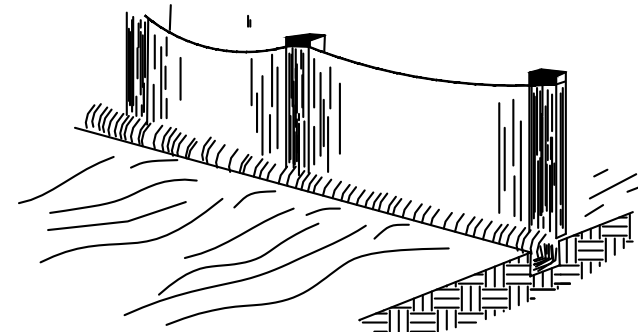
- NS1- WATER CONSERVATION PRACTICES  
 NS6- ILLICIT CONNECTION  
 NS8- VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT CLEANING  
 NS10- VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE

## WASTE MANAGEMENT & MATERIAL POLLUTION CONTROL

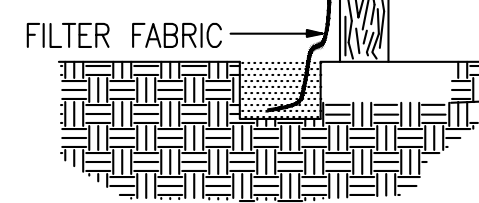
- WM1- MATERIAL DELIVERY AND STORAGE  
 WM2- MATERIAL USE/DISCHARGE  
 WM3- STOCKPILE MANAGEMENT  
 WM4- SPILL PREVENTION AND CONTROL  
 WM5- SOLID WASTE MANAGEMENT  
 WM7- CONTAMINATION SOIL MANAGEMENT  
 WM8- CONCRETE WASTE MANAGEMENT  
 WM9- SANITARY

## CONSTRUCTION NOTES

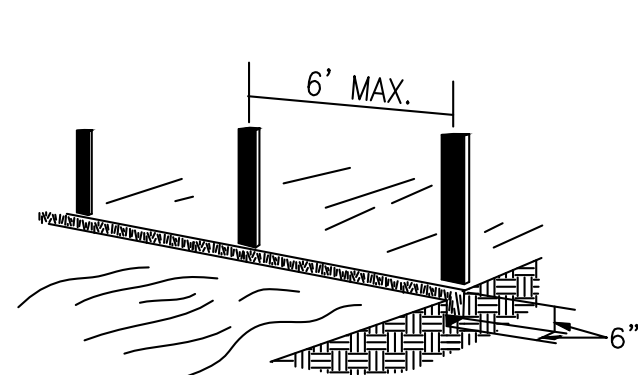
- DESCRIPTION**
- 1 STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE PER DETAIL HEREON TC-1, TC-3
  - 2 SILT FENCE PER DETAIL HEREON SE-1
  - 3 CHECK DAM PER DETAIL HEREON SE-6



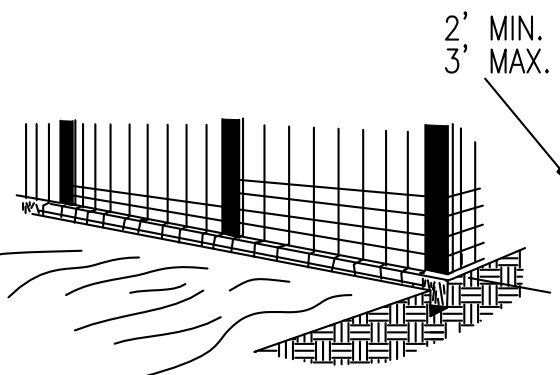
1. SET POSTS AND EXCAVATE A 6 INCH BY 6 INCH TRENCH UPSLOPE FROM AND ALONG THE LINE OF POSTS.



2. STAPLE THE FILTER FABRIC TO THE FENCE.



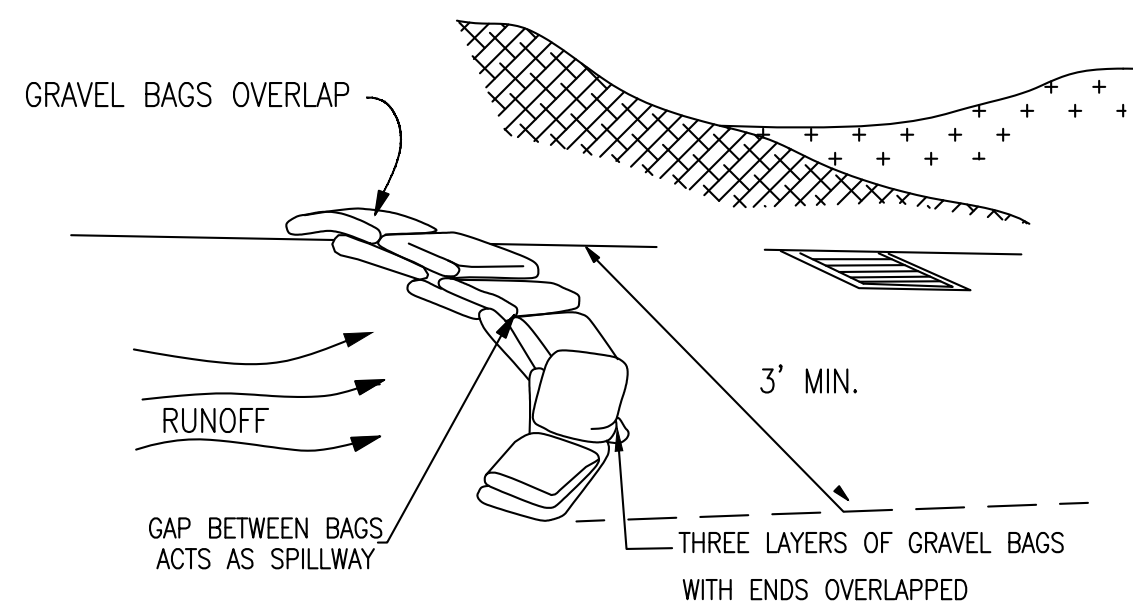
3. EXTEND THE FILTER FABRIC INTO THE 6" x 6" TRENCH.



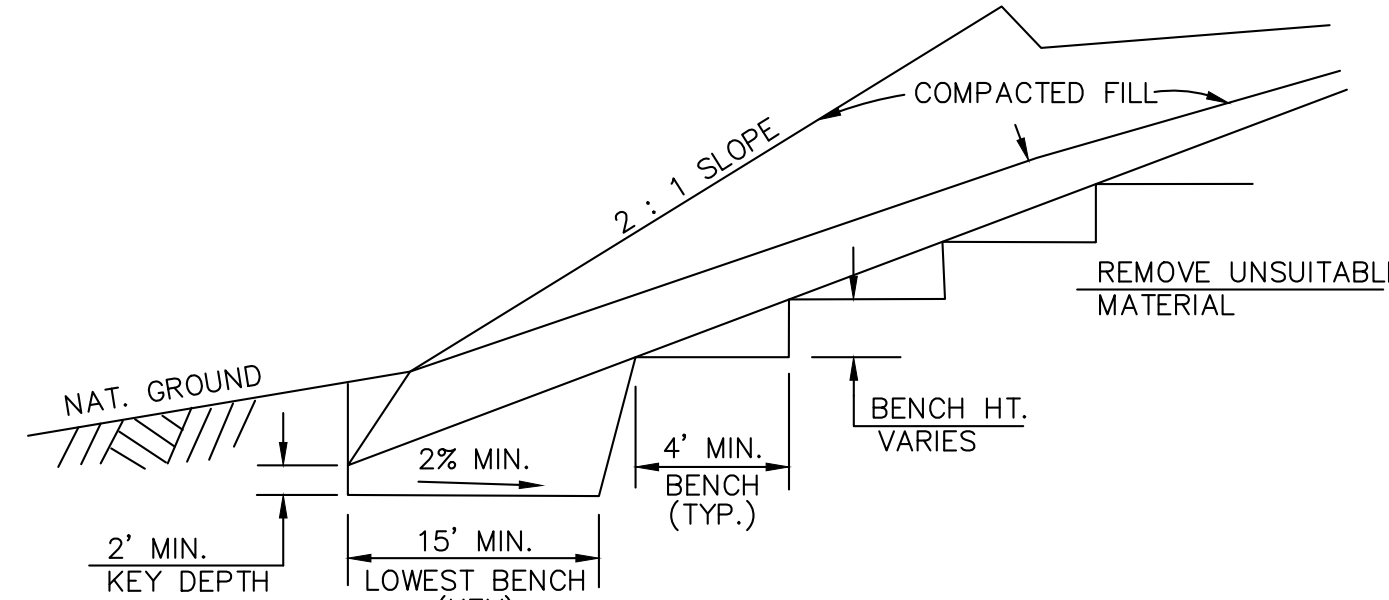
4. BACKFILL AND COMPACT THE EXCAVATED SOIL.

**2 SILT FENCE DETAIL**  
NO SCALE

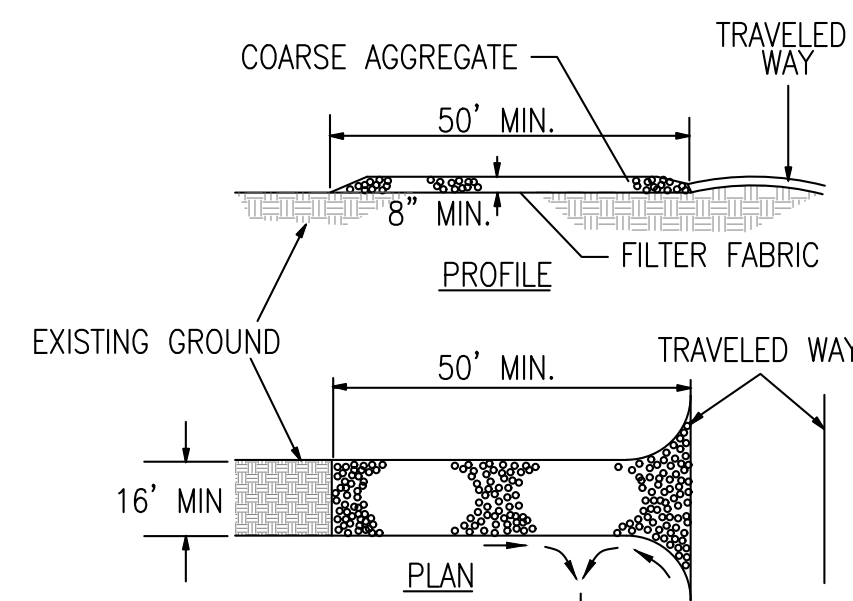
THE SILT FENCE SHOULD BE SUPPORTED BY A WIRE MESH IF THE FILTER FABRIC DOES NOT HAVE SUFFICIENT STRENGTH AND BURSTING STRENGTH CHARACTERISTICS (AS RECOMMENDED BY THE FABRIC MANUFACTURER)



**3 GRAVEL BAGS**  
NO SCALE



**FILL OVER NATURAL SLOPE DETAIL**  
NOTE: DETAIL PER CBC 2016 APPENDIX 'J' FIGURE J107.3



**1 STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE AND CONSTRUCTION ROADWAY**  
NO SCALE

NOTE: CONSTRUCT SEDIMENT BARRIER AND CHANNELIZE RUNOFF TO SEDIMENT TRAPPING DEVICE

**DIG ALERT**  
 DIAL TOLL FREE  
 1-800-227-2600  
 AT LEAST TWO DAYS BEFORE YOU DIG  
 UNDERGROUND SERVICE ALERT OF SOUTHERN CALIFORNIA

WORK CONTAINED WITHIN THESE PLANS SHALL NOT COMMENCE UNTIL AN ENCROACHMENT PERMIT AND/OR A GRADING PERMIT HAS BEEN ISSUED.

MARK	BY	DATE	REVISIONS	APPR.	COUNTY

SEAL-COUNTY	SEAL-ENGINEER	ENGINEER OF WORK	BENCHMARK:	DRAWN	VEY	DESIGNED	VEY	CHECKED	WV	SCALE	AS SHOWN	JOB NUMBER	VEI 2020-200	FOR:	W.O.	COUNTY FILE NO.

SEAL-ENGINEER	ENGINEER OF WORK

WILFREDO S.D. VENTURA  
 No. 66532  
 Exp. 6-30-22  
 CIVIL  
 STATE OF CALIFORNIA

VENTURA ENGINEERING INLAND, INC  
 27393 Ynez Road, Suite 159  
 Temecula, CA 92591  
 Phone: (951)252-7632  
 wilfredo@venturaengineeringinland.com

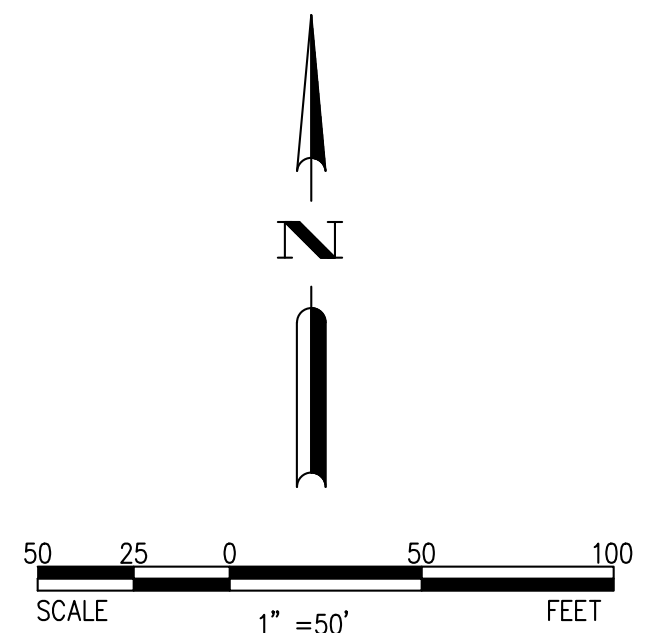
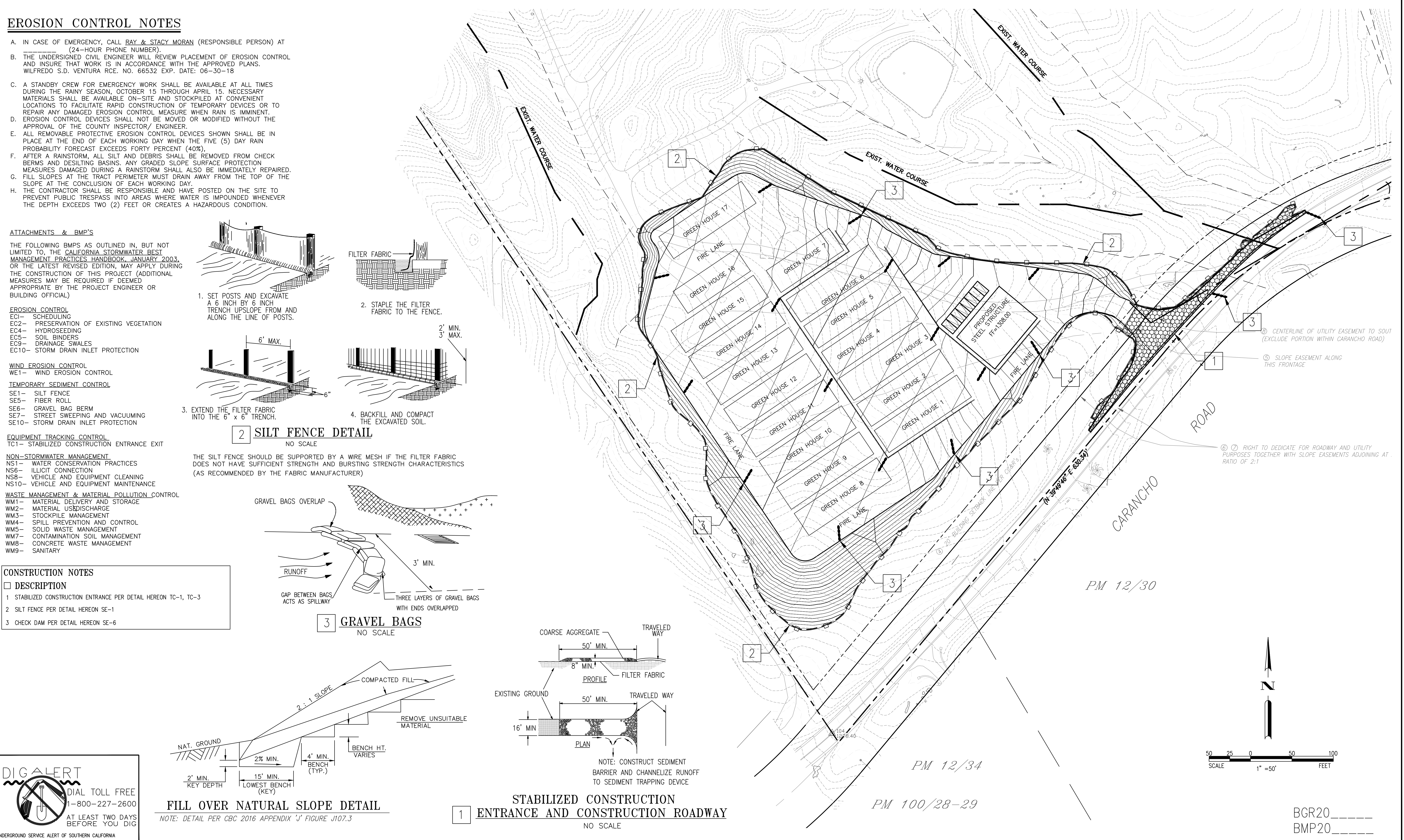
WILFREDO S.D. VENTURA  
 RCE 66532 EXP. 06/30/22

VEI  
 DATE 01/25/21

FOR: W.O. COUNTY FILE NO.

COUNTY OF RIVERSIDE  
 CANNABIS CULTIVATION FACILITY  
 APN 933-020-005-6  
 SITE EROSION AND CONTROL PLAN

SHEET NO. 2  
 OF 2 SHEETS  
 FILE NO.




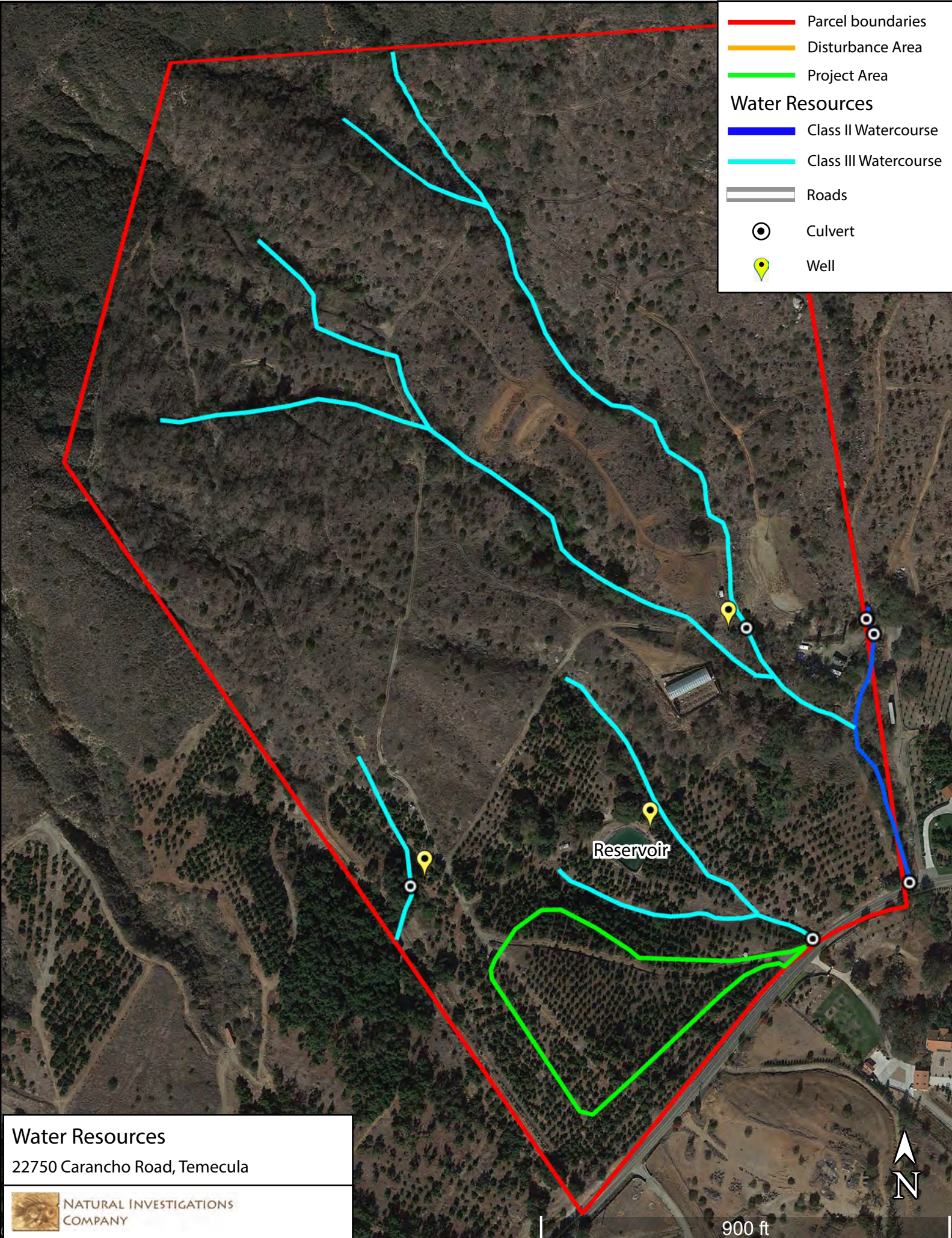
BGR20  
 BMP20



- Parcel boundaries
- Disturbance Area
- Project Area

**Water Resources**

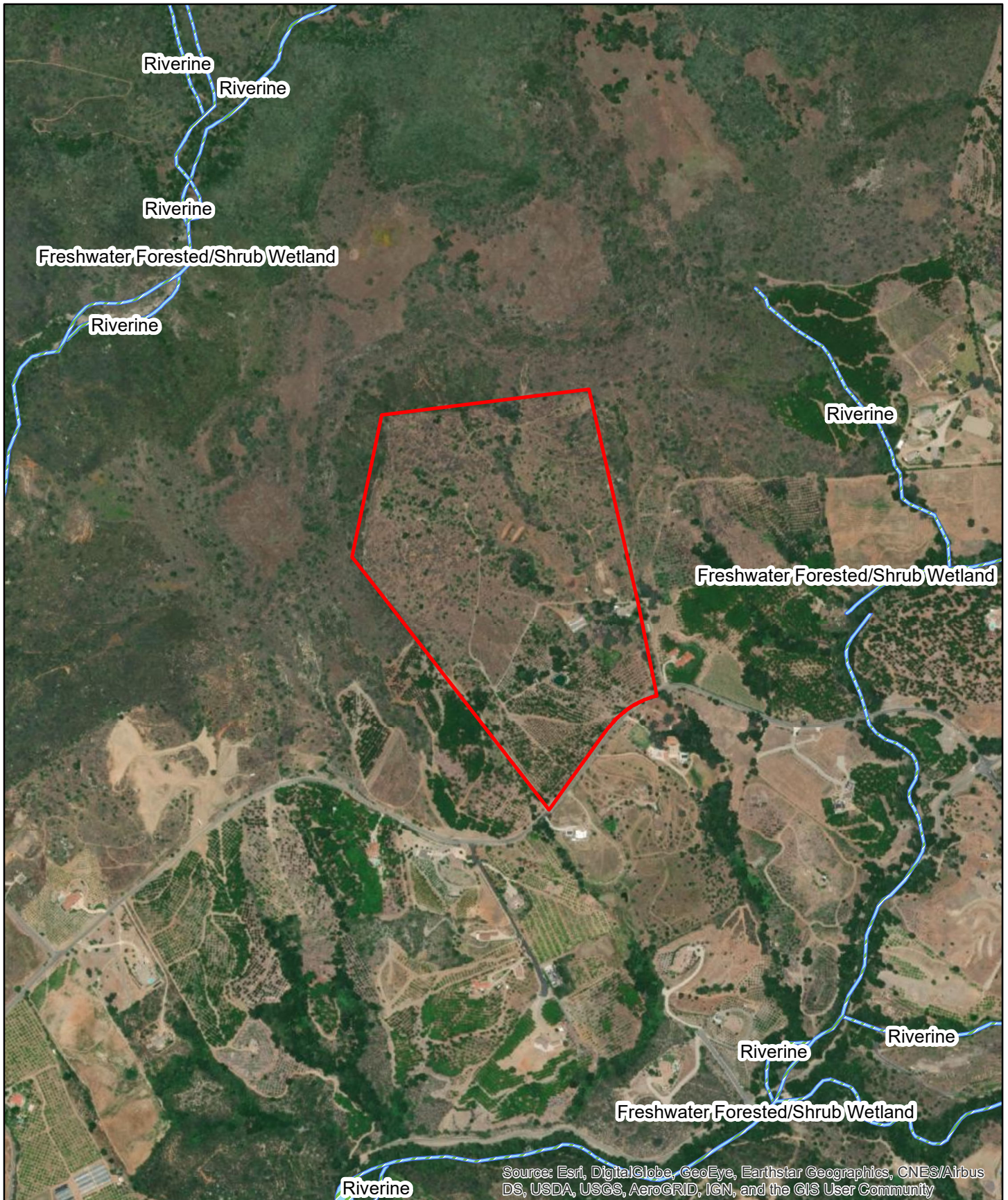
- Class II Watercourse
- Class III Watercourse
- Roads
-  Culvert
-  Well









**Water Resources**  
 22750 Carancho Road, Temecula



900 ft



 Parcel Location  Wetlands and Channels	0      250      500  Meters	 1:10,000	<b>22750 Carancho Road</b> <b>National Wetlands Inventory</b> <b>Features Map</b>  <b>NATURAL INVESTIGATIONS COMPANY</b>
	0      1,000      2,000  Feet		



**Best Management Practices  
Sediment / Erosion Control Drawing**

- ④ CENTERLINE OF U (EXCLUDE PORTION W
- ⑤ SLOPE EASEMENT THIS FRONTAGE
- ⑥ ⑦ RIGHT TO DEDICATE FOR ROAD PURPOSES TOGETHER WITH SLOPE E RATIO OF 2:1

Device Legend	
	Fiber rolls BMP #SE-5
	Surface stabilization BMP #EC-2,6-8,15,16
	Silt Fence BMP #SE-1
	Road / parking lot management BMP #SC-40,43,44
	Fiber mat or similar BMP #EC-7
	Chemical handling BMP #WM-1 thru 6
	Swale management BMP #EC-9, SE-6,8,9
	Waste management BMP #WM-5-7, SC-34
	Toilet / Liquid Waste Management BMP # WM-10, SC-31
	Sediment trap or basin BMP #SE-2, 3
	Water quality monitoring location

PM 12/30

## **Appendix A: Permit Documents**

**Insert here or bind separately:**

- **Notice of Receipt**
- **Notice of Applicability**
- **Other Permit Documents**



GAVIN NEWSOM  
GOVERNOR



JARED BLUMENFELD  
SECRETARY FOR  
ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

## State Water Resources Control Board

**Cannabis General Order Application Number: 429488**

Fee Payment Application Number: BA90429488

**Self-Certification Date: 10/20/2020**

# NOTICE OF RECEIPT

## STATE WATER RESOURCES CONTROL BOARD GENERAL WASTE DISCHARGE REQUIREMENTS AND WAIVER OF WASTE DISCHARGE REQUIREMENTS FOR DISCHARGES OF WASTE ASSOCIATED WITH CANNABIS CULTIVATION ACTIVITIES

Your application for coverage under the Cannabis General Order has been received.

### CDFA License

For dischargers seeking a cultivation license from CDFA, this Notice of Receipt is insufficient. Upon payment of your application fee (see Fee Payment section) and submittal of Native American tribal authorization (if needed; see Native American Tribe Authorization section below), you will receive a separate Notice of Applicability (NOA) to be used for obtaining a CDFA license.

### Fee Payment

**Within 30 calendar days of submitting your application, you must pay an application fee in order for your application to be complete.**

Your fee category is: **Tier 1 Moderate Risk. Your application fee is \$1,800.00.**

Fee's are reassessed on a yearly basis based on program revenue, expenses, and stakeholder input. You can review the current Water Boards Fee Schedule and stakeholder announcements by visiting the following website: <https://www.waterboards.ca.gov/resources/fees/> (<https://www.waterboards.ca.gov/resources/fees/>).

The application fee can be paid using electronic funds transfer, a credit card, a check, money order, or cashier check.

- If you are paying via electronic funds transfer or credit card, visit the following website: [http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/make\\_a\\_payment/](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/make_a_payment/) ([http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/make\\_a\\_payment/](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/make_a_payment/)). Include your Fee Payment Application Number when submitting your payment. Your Fee Payment Application Number can be found at the top right-hand corner of this Notice.
- If you are paying with a check, money order, or cashier check, make the check payable to the "State Water Resources Control Board", write the Fee Payment Application Number on the check, money order, or cashier check, and submit the payment to the following address:  
State Water Resources Control Board  
ATTN: Water Quality Fees - Cannabis General Order  
PO Box 1888

Sacramento, CA 95812-1888.

#### Instructions for Paying Application Fees by Cash:

All cash payments must be submitted directly to the State Water Resources Control Board (State Water Board), not the Regional Water Quality Control Board. The State Water Board is able to accept cash payments at its downtown Sacramento location. Cash payments, however, will require additional time and an appointment with the State Water Board Sacramento office. A delay in enrollment due to the need for a cash payment is not an excuse for non-compliance with applicable enrollment requirements. To schedule an appointment to make a cash payment, please call (916) 341-5021.

## **Technical Reports**

In accordance with the Cannabis General Order, **you may have one or more technical reports due**. Below is the list of technical reports due based on your site conditions.

All technical reports shall be submitted electronically to the Santa Ana Regional Water Board office at the following email address: sandiego.cannabis@waterboards.ca.gov (mailto:sandiego.cannabis@waterboards.ca.gov) and shall include "Cannabis General Order" in the email subject line and your WDID Number and the Cannabis General Order Application Number. Your WDID Number will be assigned upon issuance of the Notice of Applicability and the Cannabis General Order Application Number can be found on the top-right hand corner of this Notice. Refer to the Cannabis General Order for additional information regarding submittal of these technical reports.

Based on the information you provided, your site conditions are: Tier 1 Moderate Risk with a cultivation area less than or equal to 1 acre and a slope greater than 30 percent.

#### List of Technical Reports Due:

- 1) Site Management Plan - **due within 90 days of application submittal**
- 2) Site Erosion Sediment Control Plan - **see Cannabis General Order for due date**

## **Compliance with Best Practicable Treatment or Control (BPTC) Measures**

You have certified that your site qualifies as a Tier 1 Moderate Risk site and that you will complete improvements to achieve compliance by the onset of the winter period following submittal of this application. Winter period is defined in Attachment A of the Cannabis General Order.

## **Native American Tribe Authorization**

This section does not apply to you.

For additional information regarding your application, please contact the Santa Ana Regional Water Board office. Current contact information for the Santa Ana Regional Water Board office:

3737 Main Street, Suite 500

Riverside, CA 92501

(951) 782-4130

sandiego.cannabis@waterboards.ca.gov (mailto:sandiego.cannabis@waterboards.ca.gov)

If you notice any errors in your application, please contact the Santa Ana Regional Water Board office for more information on providing the correct information. **Do not resubmit your application or begin a new application for the purposes of correcting errors, unless you are instructed to do so by the State Water Board or Regional Water Board.**

E. JOAQUIN ESQUIVEL, CHAIR | EILEEN SOBECK, EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR

---

1001 I Street, Sacramento, CA 95814 | Mailing Address: P.O. Box 100, Sacramento, CA 95812-0100 | [www.waterboards.ca.gov](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov)



**Appendix B: The Cannabis General Order's *Attachment A: Requirements for Cannabis Cultivation***

**Bound Separately**

*This document is available on the Internet at:*

*[https://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/cannabis/docs/cannabis\\_attach\\_a\\_clean\\_version.pdf](https://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/cannabis/docs/cannabis_attach_a_clean_version.pdf)*

## Appendix C: List of Approved Pesticides





# LEGAL PEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES FOR MARIJUANA GROWERS IN CALIFORNIA

Department of Pesticide  
Regulation

## PESTS OF MARIJUANA IN CALIFORNIA

Marijuana pests vary according to cultivar (variety), whether the plants are grown indoors or outdoors, and where the plants are grown geographically. The pests included in this review are preliminary and based on the following sources: a presentation given in 2013 by Whitney Cranshaw, an extension entomologist at Colorado State University, and a review article by John M. McPartland, a professor of family medicine at the University of Vermont. We also received input from Kevin Hoffman, Primary State Entomologist, California Department of Food & Agriculture (CDFA).

## HOW TO INTERPRET THE TABLES

**Table 1** lists active ingredients not illegal to use on marijuana and the pests that these active ingredients target.

These active ingredients are exempt from **residue tolerance requirements**<sup>1</sup> and either exempt from **registration requirements**<sup>2</sup> or registered for a use that's broad enough to include use on marijuana. Residue tolerance requirements are set by U.S. EPA for each pesticide on each food crop and is the amount of pesticide residue allowed to remain in or on each treated crop with "reasonable certainty of no harm." Some pesticides are exempted from the tolerance requirement when they're found to be safe. Some of these pesticides are bacterial-based insect pathogens (e.g., *Bacillus thuringiensis*) or biofungicides (e.g., *Bacillus subtilis*, *Gliocladium virens*).

Active ingredients exempt from registration requirements are mostly food-grade essential oils such as peppermint oil or rosemary oil.

**Tables 2 and 3** list pests of marijuana grown outdoors and indoors, and **Table 3** shows pests arranged by the portion of the plant they attack. An explanation of the column labels for Tables 2 and 3 follow.

**PESTS.** The tables show the most likely pests in California based on Cranshaw's presentation and McPartland's list and gleaned from California-based web sites and blogs. Some pests that drew attention on several blogs (e.g., russet mites) may be worse during drought years. Many have cyclic population

fluctuations and others are mainstays of general greenhouse cultivation (e.g., whiteflies, thrips, and fungus gnats). We'll add weeds to this compendium when we have more information.

**DAMAGE.** For damage caused by greenhouse pests, we derived information from Cranshaw's presentation; for that of outdoor pests when there wasn't any overlap, McPartland's list was used and information from UC IPM for various crops. Accounts of damage by rodents is anecdotal.

**PESTS NOT OFFICIALLY IDENTIFIED IN CALIFORNIA.** Kevin Hoffman of CDFA notes that several marijuana pests in other states are not yet known in California. These pests would add to the russet mites, aphids, cutworms, budworms, borers, and flea beetles already in California. As more and more marijuana is planted throughout the state, collecting potential pests will enable entomologists to identify new species.

**THE IMPORTANCE OF CORRECT IDENTIFICATION.** It's essential to identify the potential pest, or you may launch a futile program for a mite or insect that isn't a pest. And likewise, you need to know the correct species or you may use the wrong management strategy. For accurate identification, take specimens to an entomologist.

**HOW TO PRESERVE SPECIMENS FOR IDENTIFICATION.** If the mite or insect specimen is hard bodied (e.g., beetles, moths) carefully place it in a small pill vial and cushion with crumpled tissue paper. If your specimen isn't yet dead, put it in a jar and place in a freezer overnight. Do not wrap specimens in tissue and seal them in plastic bags or you'll end up with smashed bug parts.

Place soft-bodied specimens (e.g., mites, leafhoppers, aphids, caterpillars) in a jar filled with rubbing alcohol. Include written information such as where on the plant you found the specimen, the general location of the plant, and date captured. Note original color and texture, since these will change once you immerse the specimen in alcohol. Also helpful are photographs of the specimen in its original habitat.

**IPM PRACTICES.** Most of these are standard practices for pests on hosts other than marijuana. For more detailed explanations, see information compiled by the

<sup>1</sup> 40 CFR (Code of Federal Regulations)

<sup>2</sup> under FIFRA section 25(b) and 3 CCR section 6147

University of California Statewide IPM Program (UC IPM) at [www.ipm.ucdavis.edu](http://www.ipm.ucdavis.edu). You can enter a pest name in the search box (e.g., cutworm) and read about IPM practices for the pest on crops other than marijuana. For marijuana grown indoors, go to the UC IPM [home page](#), click on [Agricultural Pests](#) and scroll down the alphabetical list until you reach [ornamental nurseries](#).

Some practices were excluded because they apply to nearly all of the pests. For example, when targeting aphids, whiteflies, and thrips, growers can attract predaceous and parasitic arthropods by planting strips or borders of cover crops (e.g., California buckwheat) and insectary plants—especially those in the carrot, mustard, and sunflower families (Pickett & Bugg, 1998).

**LEGAL PESTICIDES.** These are covered above in the Table 1 description and are exempt from **residue tolerance requirements** and either exempt from

**registration requirements** or registered for a use that is broad enough to include use on marijuana.

**Table 4** shows representative marijuana pests by plant part. Not all of these pests are important, but their collective damage may affect the overall health of the plant.

## REFERENCES

- Cranshaw, Whitney. 2013. Challenges and opportunities for pest management of medical marijuana in Colorado. Presentation.
- McPartland, J.M. 1996. *Cannabis* pests. J. Internatl. Hemp Assoc. 3(2): 49, 52–55.
- Pickett, C.H. & R.L. Bugg, eds. 1998. Enhancing Biological Control: Habitat management to promote natural enemies of agricultural pests. UC Press, Oakland, Calif.

**Table 1. Active ingredients that are exempt from residue tolerance requirements<sup>a</sup> and either exempt from registration requirements<sup>b</sup> or registered for a use broad enough to include use on marijuana.**

ACTIVE INGREDIENT	PEST OR DISEASE
azadirachtin <sup>a</sup>	aphids, whiteflies, fungus gnats, leafminers, cutworms
<i>Bacillus subtilis</i> QST <sup>a1</sup>	root diseases, powdery mildew
<i>Bacillus thuringiensis</i> <sup>a2</sup> subsp. <i>aizawai</i> or <i>kurstaki</i>	moth larvae (e.g., cutworms, budworms, borer)
<i>Bacillus thuringiensis</i> <sup>a2</sup> subsp. <i>israelensis</i>	fly larvae (e.g., fungus gnats)
<i>Beauveria bassiana</i> <sup>a3</sup>	whiteflies, aphids, thrips
cinnamon oil <sup>b</sup>	whiteflies
<i>Gliocladium virens</i> <sup>a1</sup>	root diseases
horticultural oils <sup>a</sup> (petroleum oil)	mites, aphids, whiteflies, thrips; powdery mildew
insecticidal soaps <sup>a</sup> (potassium salts of fatty acids)	aphids, whiteflies, cutworms, budworms
iron phosphate <sup>a</sup> , sodium ferric EDTA <sup>a</sup>	slugs and snails
neem oil <sup>a</sup>	mites; powdery mildew
potassium bicarbonate <sup>a</sup> ; sodium bicarbonate <sup>a</sup>	powdery mildew
predatory nematodes <sup>a</sup>	fungus gnats
rosemary + peppermint essential oils <sup>b</sup>	whiteflies
sulfur <sup>a</sup>	mites, flea beetles
<i>Trichoderma harzianum</i> <sup>a1</sup>	root diseases

<sup>a</sup> 40 CFR (Code of Federal Regulations)

<sup>b</sup> FIFRA §25(b) and 3 CCR §6147 [FIFRA = the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act; CCR = California Code of Regulations]

<sup>1</sup> Biofungicides

<sup>2</sup> Bacterial-based insect pathogen

<sup>3</sup> Fungal-based insect pathogen

**Table 2. PEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES FOR MARIJUANA GROWN OUTDOORS**

PEST		DAMAGE	IPM PRACTICES (monitoring; cultural, physical, mechanical, biological)	PESTICIDES
<b>MITES &amp; INSECTS</b>				
<b>two-spotted spider mites</b> <i>Tetranychus urticae</i> (and other Tetranychidae)		Suck plant sap; stipple <b>leaves</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Keep dust down by hosing off plants (if dust is a problem)</li> <li>▪ Release predatory mites</li> </ul>	neem oil, horticultural oil
<b>russet mites</b> <i>Aculops</i> spp.		Suck plant sap; kill <b>leaves and flowers</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Release predatory mites</li> </ul>	neem oil, horticultural oil, sulfur
<b>crickets</b> (field & house)		Eat <b>seedlings</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Use floating row covers or cones on individual plants</li> </ul>	—
<b>termites</b>		Eat <b>roots</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Flood nests</li> </ul>	—
<b>leafhoppers</b>		Suck plant sap; weaken plants	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Encourage natural enemies by planting nectar sources</li> </ul>	horticultural oil or insecticidal soaps for nymphs
<b>aphids</b> <i>Myzus persicae</i> , <i>Aphis fabae</i>		Suck plant sap; weaken plants	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Hang up yellow sticky cards (alates)</li> <li>▪ Hose off plants</li> </ul>	azadirachtin, horticultural oil, insecticidal soaps, <i>Beauveria bassiana</i>
<b>whiteflies</b> <i>Trialeurodes vaporariorum</i> , <i>Bemisia tabaci</i> , <i>B. argentifolii</i>		Suck plant sap; weaken plants	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Hang up yellow sticky cards</li> <li>▪ Use reflective plastic mulch</li> </ul>	azadirachtin, horticultural oil, insecticidal soaps, rosemary + peppermint oils, <i>Beauveria bassiana</i>
<b>leafminers</b> <i>Liriomyza</i> spp.		Bore into <b>roots and leaves</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Remove older infested leaves</li> <li>▪ Use biocontrol: release <i>Diglyphus</i> parasitoids</li> </ul>	azadirachtin
<b>LEPIDOPTERA</b>	<b>cutworms</b> <i>Agrotis ipsilon</i> , <i>Spodoptera exigua</i> (Noctuidae)	Eat <b>seedlings</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Use pheromone traps to detect adults.</li> <li>▪ Remove weeds, which serve as a reservoir for cutworms and other noctuids</li> </ul>	Vegetative stage only: Use <i>Bacillus thuringiensis kurstaki</i> if egg-laying adults found, insecticidal soap; azadirachtin
	<b>budworms</b> <i>Helicoverpa zea</i> (Noctuidae)	Eat flowering <b>buds</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Shake plants to dislodge larvae</li> <li>▪ Remove infested buds</li> <li>▪ Plant corn as trap crop</li> </ul>	Vegetative stage only: Use <i>Bacillus thuringiensis kurstaki</i> , insecticidal soap

PEST		DAMAGE	IPM PRACTICES (monitoring; cultural, physical, mechanical, biological)	PESTICIDES
COLEOPTERA	<b>flea beetles</b> (Chrysomelidae)	Bore into <b>stems</b> (grubs); feed on seedlings and <b>leaves</b> of larger plants (adults)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Use reflective mulches</li> <li>▪ Plant trap crops (e.g., radish or Chinese mustard)</li> </ul>	sulfur
	<b>scarab grubs</b> (possibly other beetles)	Bore into <b>stems</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Use parasitic nematodes</li> </ul>	—
<b>MAMMALS</b>				
<b>mice</b> (e.g., house mice)		Eat <b>young sprouts</b> and <b>seeds</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Double wrap a 3'-tall chicken wire fence around plants</li> <li>▪ Trap (minus rodenticides)</li> <li>▪ Mount barn owl boxes</li> </ul>	rodenticides*
<b>roof rats, <i>Rattus rattus</i></b> <b>wood rats, <i>Neotoma</i> spp.</b>		Strip bark from <b>stems</b> to build nests		
<b>pocket gophers,</b> <i>Thomomys</i> spp.		Tunnel through planting areas; feed on plants; gnaw on irrigation lines		
<b>Columbian black-tailed deer,</b> <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i> <i>columbianus</i>		Knock over plants; leave dander, droppings, and ticks behind	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Install deer fencing</li> </ul>	—
<b>black bears, <i>Ursus americana</i></b>		Knock over plants	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Install electric fencing</li> </ul>	—

\* If using a rodenticide, use products that are not DPR-restricted materials or federally restricted-use pesticides *and* are registered for a broad enough use to include use in or around marijuana cultivation sites. If using a rodenticide always read and follow the label and check to make sure that the target rodent is listed. Second-generation anticoagulant products (contain the active ingredients brodifacoum, bromadiolone, difenacoum, and difethialone) are DPR-restricted materials not labeled for field use and should never be used in or around marijuana cultivation sites.

**Table 3. PEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES FOR MARIJUANA GROWN INDOORS**  
(e.g., greenhouses, sheds, and grow rooms)

PEST	DAMAGE	IPM PRACTICES (monitoring; cultural, physical, mechanical, biological)	PESTICIDES
<b>DISEASES</b>			
<b>powdery mildew</b> <i>Sphaerotheca macularis</i>	Grow on <b>leaves</b> as white and gray powdery patches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use fans to improve air circulation</li> </ul>	horticultural oil; neem oil; sodium bicarbonate, potassium bicarbonate; <i>Bacillus subtilis</i>
<b>pythium root rots</b> <i>Pythium</i> spp.	Attack root tips and worsens when plants grow in wet soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Avoid hydroponic production or wet soil conditions</li> </ul>	Incorporate biocontrol agents into root-growing media (e.g., <i>Gliocladium virens</i> , <i>Trichoderma harzianum</i> , <i>Bacillus subtilis</i> )
<b>MITES &amp; INSECTS</b>			
<b>two-spotted spider mite</b> <i>Tetranychus urticae</i> (and other Tetranychidae)	Suck plant sap; stipple <b>leaves</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disinfest cuttings before introducing to growing area</li> <li>Release predatory mites</li> </ul>	neem oil, horticultural oil, sulfur
<b>leafhoppers</b>	Suck plant sap; weaken plants	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Encourage natural enemies by planting nectar sources</li> </ul>	horticultural oil or insecticidal soaps for nymphs
<b>whiteflies</b> <i>Trialeurodes vaporariorum</i> , <i>Bemisia tabaci</i> , <i>B. argentifolii</i>	Suck plant sap; weaken plants	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hang up yellow sticky cards</li> <li>Use biocontrol: <i>Encarsia formosa</i></li> </ul>	azadirachtin, <i>Beauveria bassiana</i> , cinnamon oil, horticultural oil
<b>thrips</b> <i>Heliethrips haemorrhoidalis</i> , <i>Frankliniella occidentalis</i> , <i>Thrips tabaci</i>	Stipple <b>leaves</b> and vector viruses	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hang up yellow or blue sticky cards</li> </ul>	
<b>dark-winged fungus gnats</b> (Diptera: Sciaridae) <i>Bradysia</i> spp.	Damage <b>roots</b> and stunt plant growth	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Avoid overwatering</li> <li>Use growing media that deters gnat development</li> <li>Hang up yellow sticky cards</li> <li>Use biocontrol: soil-dwelling predatory mites</li> </ul>	<i>Bacillus thuringiensis israelensis</i> (BTI); predatory nematodes; azadirachtin soil drenches

**Table 4. PESTS OF MARIJUANA BY PLANT PART**

Seedlings	Flower & Leaf (grown outdoors)	Flower & Leaf (grown indoors)	Stalk & Stem	Root
crickets	flea beetles	spider mites	rats	flea beetles
cutworms	leafminers	leafhoppers		white root grubs
flea beetles	budworms	aphids		root maggots
slugs		whiteflies		termites & ants
rodents		thrips		fungus gnats
birds				wireworms

# CANNABIS

PESTICIDES THAT ARE **LEGAL** TO USE



**Protecting workers, the public, and the environment from adverse effects of pesticide use in cannabis cultivation is critical to the mission of the California Department of Pesticide Regulation (DPR).** DPR and the County Agricultural Commissioners (CAC) enforce the use and sale of pesticides under Divisions 6 and 7 of the California Food and Agricultural Code (FAC), and Title 3 of the California Code of Regulations (CCR). These laws and regulations apply to all pesticide use; cannabis is no exception.

All pesticide product labels include a warning statement, precautionary statements for protecting human and environmental health, storage and disposal statements, and directions for use. By law, all pesticide users must follow these statements.

When using pesticide products in cannabis cultivation, applicators must not use a rate that is higher than the rates listed on the label and follow the agricultural use requirements including method of application, restricted entry interval, personal protective equipment, and pre-harvest interval.

Some pesticide products are never allowed in cannabis cultivation under any circumstances (see DPR's document: [Pesticides that Cannot be Used on Cannabis](#)).

---

## Always read the label prior to using any pesticide.

---

### PRODUCTS THAT CAN BE LEGALLY APPLIED TO CANNABIS IN CALIFORNIA

A pesticide product can legally be applied to cannabis under state law if the active ingredients found in the product are exempt from residue tolerance requirements and the product is either exempt from registration requirements or registered for a use that is broad enough to include use on cannabis.

Residue tolerance requirements are set by U.S. EPA for each pesticide on each food crop and are the amount of pesticide residue allowed to remain in or on each treated crop with "reasonable certainty of no harm." Some pesticides are exempt from the tolerance requirement when they are found to be minimal risk.

Active ingredients exempt from registration requirements are mostly food-grade essential oils such as peppermint oil or rosemary oil.

Cannabis cultivators who are licensed by the California Department of Food and Agriculture are required to comply with pesticide laws and regulations as enforced by DPR and the CAC's.

For more information:  
[www.cdpr.ca.gov/cannabis](http://www.cdpr.ca.gov/cannabis)

# PESTICIDES THAT ARE LEGAL TO USE ON CANNABIS

The following are examples of pesticide active ingredients that are exempt from tolerance requirements and either exempt from registration requirements or have labels broad enough to include use on cannabis. This is not an exhaustive list of active ingredients that may fit the legal use criteria. The active ingredients are organized by the intended target.

## Insecticides and Miticides

- Azadirachtin
- *Bacillus thuringiensis* sub. *kurstaki*
- *Bacillus thuringiensis* sub. *israelensis*
- *Beauveria bassiana*
- *Burkholderia* spp. strain A396
- Capsaicin
- Cinnamon and cinnamon oil
- Citric acid
- Garlic and garlic oil
- Geraniol
- Horticultural oils (petroleum oil)
- Insecticidal soaps (potassium salts of fatty acids)
- Iron phosphate
- *Isaria fumosorosea*
- Neem oil
- Potassium bicarbonate
- Potassium sorbate
- Rosemary oil
- Sesame and sesame oil
- Sodium bicarbonate
- Soybean oil
- Sulfur
- Thyme oil

## Fungicides and Antimicrobials

- *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* strain D747
- Cloves and clove oil
- Corn oil
- Cottonseed oil
- *Gliocladium virens*
- Neem oil
- Peppermint and peppermint oil
- Potassium bicarbonate
- Potassium silicate
- Rosemary and rosemary oil
- Sodium bicarbonate
- *Reynoutria sachalinensis* extract
- *Trichoderma harzianum*

## Vertebrate Repellants

- Castor oil
- Geraniol



# CANNABIS

## PESTICIDES THAT **CANNOT** BE USED



Protecting workers, the public, and the environment from adverse effects of pesticide use in cannabis cultivation is critical to the mission of the California Department of Pesticide Regulation (DPR). DPR and the County Agricultural Commissioners (CAC) enforce the use and sale of pesticides under Divisions 6 and 7 of the California Food and Agricultural Code (FAC), and Title 3 of the California Code of Regulations (CCR). These laws and regulations apply to all pesticide use; cannabis is no exception.

All pesticide product labels include a warning statement, precautionary statements for protecting human and environmental health, storage and disposal statements, and directions for use. By law, all pesticide users must follow these statements.

When using pesticide products in cannabis cultivation, applicators must not use a rate that is higher than the rates listed on the label and follow the agricultural use requirements including method of application, restricted entry interval, personal protective equipment, and pre-harvest interval.

---

**Always read the label prior to using any pesticide.**

---

---

### **Some pesticides cannot be used in cannabis cultivation.**

---

While there are some pesticide products that are legal to use on cannabis under state law, (see DPR's document: [Pesticides that are Legal to Use on Cannabis](#)) other products are never allowed in cannabis cultivation. The following criteria identify pesticide products that cannot be used in California cannabis cultivation under any circumstances. The use of any pesticides meeting any one of these criteria on cannabis will be strictly enforced as a violation of the FAC and could result in civil or criminal penalties (FAC sections 12996 and 12999.5):

- Not registered for a food use in California
- California Restricted Material including Federal Restricted Use Pesticides (3CCR section 6400)  
On the groundwater protection list (3CCR section 6800)

Cannabis cultivators who are licensed by the California Department of Food and Agriculture are required to comply with pesticide laws and regulations as enforced by DPR and the CAC's.

For more information:  
[www.cdpr.ca.gov/cannabis](http://www.cdpr.ca.gov/cannabis)

# PESTICIDES THAT **CANNOT** BE USED ON CANNABIS

The following are criteria for identifying pesticides that cannot be used in cannabis cultivation and examples of active ingredients meeting these criteria. This is a representative list of active ingredients and not intended to be exhaustive. The fact that an active ingredient is not listed does not authorize its use on cannabis in California.

## Pesticides Not Registered for Food Use in California

If a pesticide product does not have directions for use on a food crop, it cannot be used in cannabis cultivation. Examples of active ingredients that do not have food uses include:

- Aldicarb
- Carbofuran
- Chlordane
- Chlorfenapyr
- Coumaphos
- Daminozide
- DDVP (Dichlorvos)
- Etofenprox
- Fenoxycarb
- Imazalil
- Methyl parathion
- Mevinphos
- Paclobutrazol
- Propoxur
- Spiroxamine
- Thiacloprid

## California Restricted Materials

DPR designates certain pesticides as California restricted materials (3 CCR section 6400). A pesticide can be considered a restricted material for many reasons including designation as a federal Restricted Use Pesticide. Many of these products have product labels that clearly state "Restricted Use Pesticide." Consult your local CAC to determine whether a product is a restricted material. Examples of California restricted materials include:

- Abamectin
- Bifenthrin
- Brodifacoum
- Bromodiolone
- Cyfluthrin
- Difenacoum
- Difethialone
- Fipronil
- Naled

## Pesticides on the Groundwater Protection List

Active ingredients that are on the Groundwater Protection List (3CCR section 6800) have chemical characteristics that make them likely to move into groundwater. Examples of active ingredients on the groundwater protection list include:

- Acephate
- Azoxystrobin
- Boscalid
- Carbaryl
- Chlorantraniliprole
- Diazinon
- Dimethoate
- Dimethomorph
- Ethoprop(hos)
- Fludioxonil
- Imidacloprid
- Malathion
- Metalaxyl
- Methiocarb
- Methomyl
- Myclobutanil
- Propiconazole
- Tebuconazole
- Thiamethoxam

## **Appendix D: Fact Sheets**

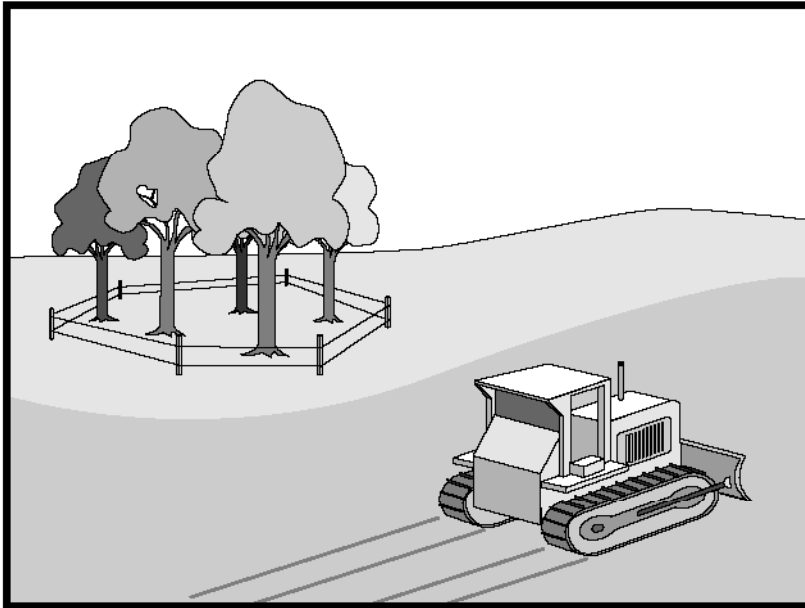
**Insert here or bind separately**

- **BMP Fact Sheets from the CASQA (2014) Stormwater Best Management Practice Handbook: Industrial & Commercial.**
- **BMP Fact Sheets from the CASQA (2011) Stormwater Best Management Practice Handbook: Construction.**

**Also refer to:**

**Handbook for Forest, Ranch, and Rural Roads: A Guide for Planning, Designing, Constructing, Reconstructing, Upgrading, Maintaining, and Closing Wildland Roads. 2015. Pacific Watershed Associates, Arcata, California. 420 pp.**

# Preservation Of Existing Vegetation EC-2



## Description and Purpose

Carefully planned preservation of existing vegetation minimizes the potential of removing or injuring existing trees, vines, shrubs, and grasses that protect soil from erosion.

## Suitable Applications

Preservation of existing vegetation is suitable for use on most projects. Large project sites often provide the greatest opportunity for use of this BMP. Suitable applications include the following:

- Areas within the site where no construction activity occurs, or occurs at a later date. This BMP is especially suitable to multi year projects where grading can be phased.
- Areas where natural vegetation exists and is designated for preservation. Such areas often include steep slopes, watercourse, and building sites in wooded areas.
- Areas where local, state, and federal government require preservation, such as vernal pools, wetlands, marshes, certain oak trees, etc. These areas are usually designated on the plans, or in the specifications, permits, or environmental documents.
- Where vegetation designated for ultimate removal can be temporarily preserved and be utilized for erosion control and sediment control.

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

None



# **EC-2 Preservation Of Existing Vegetation**

---

## **Limitations**

- Requires forward planning by the owner/developer, contractor, and design staff.
- Limited opportunities for use when project plans do not incorporate existing vegetation into the site design.
- For sites with diverse topography, it is often difficult and expensive to save existing trees while grading the site satisfactory for the planned development.

## **Implementation**

The best way to prevent erosion is to not disturb the land. In order to reduce the impacts of new development and redevelopment, projects may be designed to avoid disturbing land in sensitive areas of the site (e.g., natural watercourses, steep slopes), and to incorporate unique or desirable existing vegetation into the site's landscaping plan. Clearly marking and leaving a buffer area around these unique areas during construction will help to preserve these areas as well as take advantage of natural erosion prevention and sediment trapping.

Existing vegetation to be preserved on the site must be protected from mechanical and other injury while the land is being developed. The purpose of protecting existing vegetation is to ensure the survival of desirable vegetation for shade, beautification, and erosion control. Mature vegetation has extensive root systems that help to hold soil in place, thus reducing erosion. In addition, vegetation helps keep soil from drying rapidly and becoming susceptible to erosion. To effectively save existing vegetation, no disturbances of any kind should be allowed within a defined area around the vegetation. For trees, no construction activity should occur within the drip line of the tree.

## **Timing**

- Provide for preservation of existing vegetation prior to the commencement of clearing and grubbing operations or other soil disturbing activities in areas where no construction activity is planned or will occur at a later date.

## **Design and Layout**

- Mark areas to be preserved with temporary fencing. Include sufficient setback to protect roots.
  - Orange colored plastic mesh fencing works well.
  - Use appropriate fence posts and adequate post spacing and depth to completely support the fence in an upright position.
- Locate temporary roadways, stockpiles, and layout areas to avoid stands of trees, shrubs, and grass.
- Consider the impact of grade changes to existing vegetation and the root zone.
- Maintain existing irrigation systems where feasible. Temporary irrigation may be required.
- Instruct employees and subcontractors to honor protective devices. Prohibit heavy equipment, vehicular traffic, or storage of construction materials within the protected area.

# Preservation Of Existing Vegetation EC-2

---

## Costs

There is little cost associated with preserving existing vegetation if properly planned during the project design, and these costs may be offset by aesthetic benefits that enhance property values. During construction, the cost for preserving existing vegetation will likely be less than the cost of applying erosion and sediment controls to the disturbed area. Replacing vegetation inadvertently destroyed during construction can be extremely expensive, sometimes in excess of \$10,000 per tree.

## Inspection and Maintenance

During construction, the limits of disturbance should remain clearly marked at all times. Irrigation or maintenance of existing vegetation should be described in the landscaping plan. If damage to protected trees still occurs, maintenance guidelines described below should be followed:

- Verify that protective measures remain in place. Restore damaged protection measures immediately.
- Serious tree injuries shall be attended to by an arborist.
- Damage to the crown, trunk, or root system of a retained tree shall be repaired immediately.
- Trench as far from tree trunks as possible, usually outside of the tree drip line or canopy. Curve trenches around trees to avoid large roots or root concentrations. If roots are encountered, consider tunneling under them. When trenching or tunneling near or under trees to be retained, place tunnels at least 18 in. below the ground surface, and not below the tree center to minimize impact on the roots.
- Do not leave tree roots exposed to air. Cover exposed roots with soil as soon as possible. If soil covering is not practical, protect exposed roots with wet burlap or peat moss until the tunnel or trench is ready for backfill.
- Cleanly remove the ends of damaged roots with a smooth cut.
- Fill trenches and tunnels as soon as possible. Careful filling and tamping will eliminate air spaces in the soil, which can damage roots.
- If bark damage occurs, cut back all loosened bark into the undamaged area, with the cut tapered at the top and bottom and drainage provided at the base of the wood. Limit cutting the undamaged area as much as possible.
- Aerate soil that has been compacted over a tree's root zone by punching holes 12 in. deep with an iron bar, and moving the bar back and forth until the soil is loosened. Place holes 18 in. apart throughout the area of compacted soil under the tree crown.
- Fertilization
  - Fertilize stressed or damaged broadleaf trees to aid recovery.
  - Fertilize trees in the late fall or early spring.

## **EC-2 Preservation Of Existing Vegetation**

---

- Apply fertilizer to the soil over the feeder roots and in accordance with label instructions, but never closer than 3 ft to the trunk. Increase the fertilized area by one-fourth of the crown area for conifers that have extended root systems.
- Retain protective measures until all other construction activity is complete to avoid damage during site cleanup and stabilization.

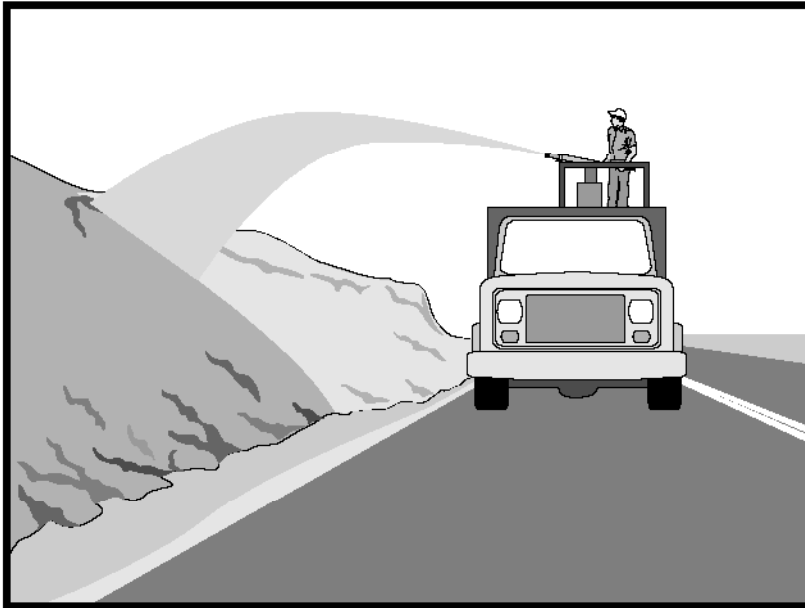
### **References**

County of Sacramento Tree Preservation Ordinance, September 1981.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for The Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



## Description and Purpose

Hydraulic mulch consists of applying a mixture of shredded wood fiber or a hydraulic matrix, and a stabilizing emulsion or tackifier with hydro-mulching equipment, which temporarily protects exposed soil from erosion by raindrop impact or wind.

## Suitable Applications

Hydraulic mulch is suitable for soil disturbed areas requiring temporary protection until permanent stabilization is established, and disturbed areas that will be re-disturbed following an extended period of inactivity.

## Limitations

Wood fiber hydraulic mulches are generally short lived and need 24 hours to dry before rainfall occurs to be effective. May require a second application in order to remain effective for an entire rainy season.

## Implementation

- Prior to application, roughen embankment and fill areas by rolling with a crimping or punching roller or by track walking. Track walking shall only be used where other methods are impractical.
- To be effective, hydraulic matrices require 24 hours to dry before rainfall occurs.
- Avoid mulch over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, existing vegetation, etc.

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-4 Hydroseeding
- EC-5 Soil Binders
- EC-6 Straw Mulch
- EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats
- EC-8 Wood Mulching





- Paper based hydraulic mulches alone shall not be used for erosion control.

***Hydraulic Mulches***

Wood fiber mulch can be applied alone or as a component of hydraulic matrices. Wood fiber applied alone is typically applied at the rate of 2,000 to 4,000 lb/acre. Wood fiber mulch is manufactured from wood or wood waste from lumber mills or from urban sources.

***Hydraulic Matrices***

Hydraulic matrices include a mixture of wood fiber and acrylic polymer or other tackifier as binder. Apply as a liquid slurry using a hydraulic application machine (i.e., hydro seeder) at the following minimum rates, or as specified by the manufacturer to achieve complete coverage of the target area: 2,000 to 4,000 lb/acre wood fiber mulch, and 5 to 10% (by weight) of tackifier (acrylic copolymer, guar, psyllium, etc.)

***Bonded Fiber Matrix***

Bonded fiber matrix (BFM) is a hydraulically applied system of fibers and adhesives that upon drying forms an erosion resistant blanket that promotes vegetation, and prevents soil erosion. BFMs are typically applied at rates from 3,000 lb/acre to 4,000 lb/acre based on the manufacturer's recommendation. A biodegradable BFM is composed of materials that are 100% biodegradable. The binder in the BFM should also be biodegradable and should not dissolve or disperse upon re-wetting. Typically, biodegradable BFMs should not be applied immediately before, during or immediately after rainfall if the soil is saturated. Depending on the product, BFMs typically require 12 to 24 hours to dry and become effective.

**Costs**

Average cost for installation of wood fiber mulch is \$900/acre. Average cost for installation of BFM is \$5,500/acre.

**Inspection and Maintenance**

- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Areas where erosion is evident shall be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.
- Maintain an unbroken, temporary mulched ground cover throughout the period of construction when the soils are not being reworked.

**References**

Controlling Erosion of Construction Sites Agricultural Information #347, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) (formerly Soil Conservation Service – SCS).

Guides for Erosion and Sediment Control in California, USDA Soils Conservation Service, January 1991.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Sedimentation and Erosion Control, An Inventory of Current Practices Draft, US EPA, April 1990.

Soil Erosion by Water, Agriculture Information Bulletin #513, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service.

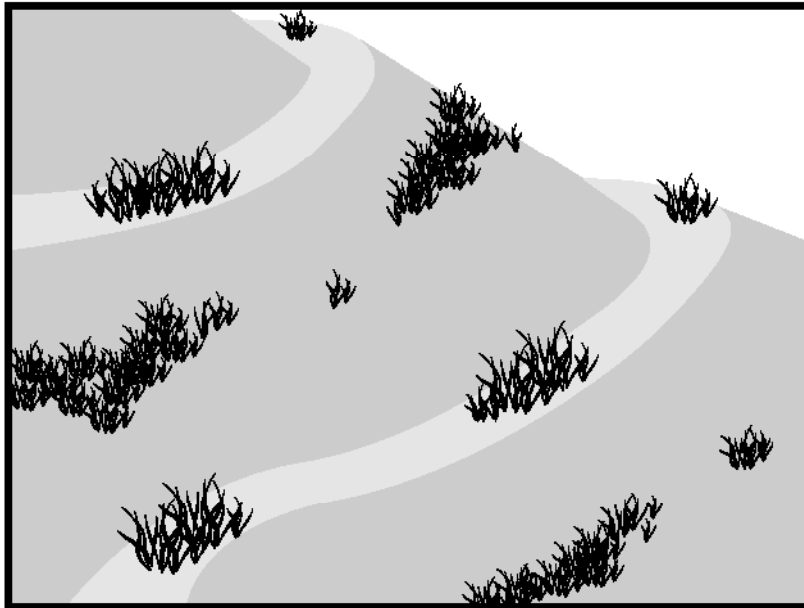
Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.





## Description and Purpose

Hydroseeding typically consists of applying a mixture of wood fiber, seed, fertilizer, and stabilizing emulsion with hydro-mulch equipment, to temporarily protect exposed soils from erosion by water and wind.

## Suitable Applications

Hydroseeding is suitable for soil disturbed areas requiring temporary protection until permanent stabilization is established, and disturbed areas that will be re-disturbed following an extended period of inactivity.

## Limitations

- Hydroseeding may be used alone only when there is sufficient time in the season to ensure adequate vegetation establishment and coverage to provide adequate erosion control. Otherwise, hydroseeding must be used in conjunction with mulching (i.e., straw mulch).
- Steep slopes are difficult to protect with temporary seeding.
- Temporary seeding may not be appropriate in dry periods without supplemental irrigation.
- Temporary vegetation may have to be removed before permanent vegetation is applied.
- Temporary vegetation is not appropriate for short term inactivity.

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-5 Soil Binders
- EC-6 Straw Mulch
- EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats
- EC-8 Wood Mulching



**Implementation**

In order to select appropriate hydroseeding mixtures, an evaluation of site conditions shall be performed with respect to:

- Soil conditions
- Site topography
- Season and climate
- Vegetation types
- Maintenance requirements
- Sensitive adjacent areas
- Water availability
- Plans for permanent vegetation

The local office of the U.S.D.A. Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) is an excellent source of information on appropriate seed mixes.

The following steps shall be followed for implementation:

- Avoid use of hydroseeding in areas where the BMP would be incompatible with future earthwork activities and would have to be removed.
- Hydroseeding can be accomplished using a multiple step or one step process. The multiple step process ensures maximum direct contact of the seeds to soil. When the one step process is used to apply the mixture of fiber, seed, etc., the seed rate shall be increased to compensate for all seeds not having direct contact with the soil.
- Prior to application, roughen the area to be seeded with the furrows trending along the contours.
- Apply a straw mulch to keep seeds in place and to moderate soil moisture and temperature until the seeds germinate and grow.
- All seeds shall be in conformance with the California State Seed Law of the Department of Agriculture. Each seed bag shall be delivered to the site sealed and clearly marked as to species, purity, percent germination, dealer's guarantee, and dates of test. The container shall be labeled to clearly reflect the amount of Pure Live Seed (PLS) contained. All legume seed shall be pellet inoculated. Inoculant sources shall be species specific and shall be applied at a rate of 2 lb of inoculant per 100 lb seed.
- Commercial fertilizer shall conform to the requirements of the California Food and Agricultural Code. Fertilizer shall be pelleted or granular form.
- Follow up applications shall be made as needed to cover weak spots and to maintain adequate soil protection.
- Avoid over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, existing vegetation, etc.

**Costs**

Average cost for installation and maintenance may vary from as low as \$300 per acre for flat slopes and stable soils, to \$1600 per acre for moderate to steep slopes and/or erosive soils.

Hydroseeding		Installed Cost per Acre
High Density	Ornamentals	\$400 - \$1600
	Turf Species	\$350
	Bunch Grasses	\$300 - \$1300
Fast Growing	Annual	\$350 - \$650
	Perennial	\$300 - \$800
Non-Competing	Native	\$300 - \$1600
	Non-Native	\$400 - \$500
Sterile	Cereal Grain	\$500

Source: Caltrans Guidance for Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, Nov. 1999

## Inspection and Maintenance

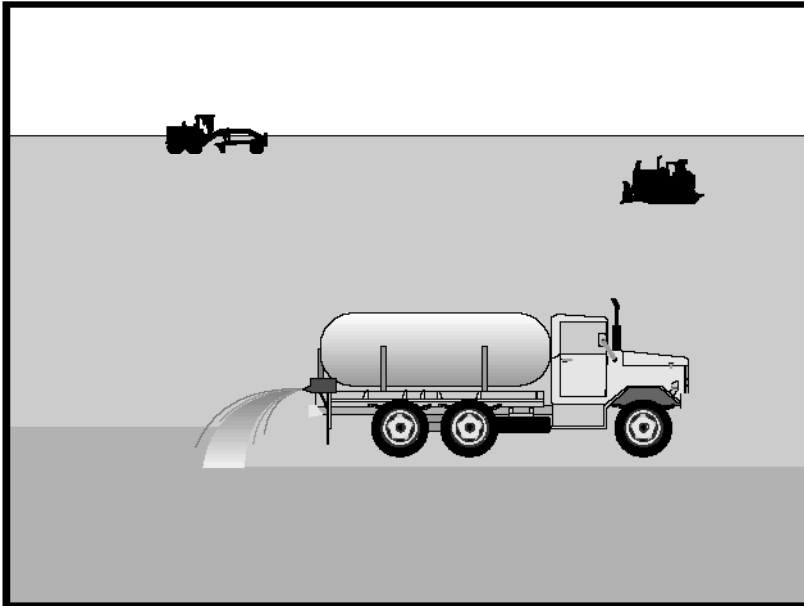
- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Areas where erosion is evident shall be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.
- Where seeds fail to germinate, or they germinate and die, the area must be re-seeded, fertilized, and mulched within the planting season, using not less than half the original application rates.
- Irrigation systems, if applicable, should be inspected daily while in use to identify system malfunctions and line breaks. When line breaks are detected, the system must be shut down immediately and breaks repaired before the system is put back into operation.
- Irrigation systems shall be inspected for complete coverage and adjusted as needed to maintain complete coverage.

## References

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999.





## Description and Purpose

Soil binders consist of applying and maintaining a soil stabilizer to exposed soil surfaces. Soil binders are materials applied to the soil surface to temporarily prevent water induced erosion of exposed soils on construction sites. Soil binders also prevent wind erosion.

## Suitable Applications

Soil binders are typically applied to disturbed areas requiring short term temporary protection. Because soil binders can often be incorporated into the work, they are a good alternative to mulches in areas where grading activities will soon resume. Soil binders are also suitable for use on stockpiles.

## Limitations

- Soil binders are temporary in nature and may need reapplication.
- Soil binders require a minimum curing time until fully effective, as prescribed by the manufacturer. Curing time may be 24 hours or longer. Soil binders may need reapplication after a storm event.
- Soil binders will generally experience spot failures during heavy rainfall events. If runoff penetrates the soil at the top of a slope treated with a soil binder, it is likely that the runoff will undercut the stabilized soil layer and discharge at a point further down slope.

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-4 Hydroseeding
- EC-6 Straw Mulch
- EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats
- EC-8 Wood Mulching





- Soil binders do not hold up to pedestrian or vehicular traffic across treated areas.
- Soil binders may not penetrate soil surfaces made up primarily of silt and clay, particularly when compacted.
- Some soil binders may not perform well with low relative humidity. Under rainy conditions, some agents may become slippery or leach out of the soil.
- Soil binders may not cure if low temperatures occur within 24 hours of application.
- The water quality impacts of soil binders are relatively unknown and some may have water quality impacts due to their chemical makeup.
- A sampling and analysis plan must be incorporated into the SWPPP as soil binders could be a source of non-visible pollutants.

### **Implementation**

#### ***General Considerations***

- Regional soil types will dictate appropriate soil binders to be used.
- A soil binder must be environmentally benign (non-toxic to plant and animal life), easy to apply, easy to maintain, economical, and should not stain paved or painted surfaces. Soil binders should not pollute stormwater.
- Some soil binders may not be compatible with existing vegetation.
- Performance of soil binders depends on temperature, humidity, and traffic across treated areas.
- Avoid over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, existing vegetation, etc.

#### ***Selecting a Soil Binder***

Properties of common soil binders used for erosion control are provided on Table 1 at the end of this BMP. Use Table 1 to select an appropriate soil binder. Refer to WE-1, Wind Erosion Control, for dust control soil binders.

Factors to consider when selecting a soil binder include the following:

- Suitability to situation - Consider where the soil binder will be applied, if it needs a high resistance to leaching or abrasion, and whether it needs to be compatible with any existing vegetation. Determine the length of time soil stabilization will be needed, and if the soil binder will be placed in an area where it will degrade rapidly. In general, slope steepness is not a discriminating factor for the listed soil binders.
- Soil types and surface materials - Fines and moisture content are key properties of surface materials. Consider a soil binder's ability to penetrate, likelihood of leaching, and ability to form a surface crust on the surface materials.
- Frequency of application - The frequency of application can be affected by subgrade conditions, surface type, climate, and maintenance schedule. Frequent applications could

lead to high costs. Application frequency may be minimized if the soil binder has good penetration, low evaporation, and good longevity. Consider also that frequent application will require frequent equipment clean up.

### ***Plant-Material Based (Short Lived) Binders***

**Guar:** Guar is a non-toxic, biodegradable, natural galactomannan based hydrocolloid treated with dispersant agents for easy field mixing. It should be mixed with water at the rate of 11 to 15 lb per 1,000 gallons. Recommended minimum application rates are as follows:

**Application Rates for Guar Soil Stabilizer**

Slope (H:V):	Flat	4:1	3:1	2:1	1:1
lb/acre:	40	45	50	60	70

**Psyllium:** Psyllium is composed of the finely ground muciloid coating of plantago seeds that is applied as a dry powder or in a wet slurry to the surface of the soil. It dries to form a firm but rewettable membrane that binds soil particles together but permits germination and growth of seed. Psyllium requires 12 to 18 hours drying time. Application rates should be from 80 to 200 lb/acre, with enough water in solution to allow for a uniform slurry flow.

**Starch:** Starch is non-ionic, cold water soluble (pre-gelatinized) granular cornstarch. The material is mixed with water and applied at the rate of 150 lb/acre. Approximate drying time is 9 to 12 hours.

### ***Plant-Material Based (Long Lived) Binders***

**Pitch and Rosin Emulsion:** Generally, a non-ionic pitch and rosin emulsion has a minimum solids content of 48%. The rosin should be a minimum of 26% of the total solids content. The soil stabilizer should be non-corrosive, water dilutable emulsion that upon application cures to a water insoluble binding and cementing agent. For soil erosion control applications, the emulsion is diluted and should be applied as follows:

- For clayey soil: 5 parts water to 1 part emulsion
- For sandy soil: 10 parts water to 1 part emulsion

Application can be by water truck or hydraulic seeder with the emulsion and product mixture applied at the rate specified by the manufacturer.

### ***Polymeric Emulsion Blend Binders***

**Acrylic Copolymers and Polymers:** Polymeric soil stabilizers should consist of a liquid or solid polymer or copolymer with an acrylic base that contains a minimum of 55% solids. The polymeric compound should be handled and mixed in a manner that will not cause foaming or should contain an anti-foaming agent. The polymeric emulsion should not exceed its shelf life or expiration date; manufacturers should provide the expiration date. Polymeric soil stabilizer should be readily miscible in water, non-injurious to seed or animal life, non-flammable, should provide surface soil stabilization for various soil types without totally inhibiting water infiltration, and should not re-emulsify when cured. The applied compound should air cure within a maximum of 36 to 48 hours. Liquid copolymer should be diluted at a rate of 10 parts water to 1 part polymer and the mixture applied to soil at a rate of 1,175 gallons/acre.

Liquid Polymers of Methacrylates and Acrylates: This material consists of a tackifier/sealer that is a liquid polymer of methacrylates and acrylates. It is an aqueous 100% acrylic emulsion blend of 40% solids by volume that is free from styrene, acetate, vinyl, ethoxylated surfactants or silicates. For soil stabilization applications, it is diluted with water in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations, and applied with a hydraulic seeder at the rate of 20 gallons/acre. Drying time is 12 to 18 hours after application.

Copolymers of Sodium Acrylates and Acrylamides: These materials are non-toxic, dry powders that are copolymers of sodium acrylate and acrylamide. They are mixed with water and applied to the soil surface for erosion control at rates that are determined by slope gradient:

Slope Gradient (H:V)	lb/acre
Flat to 5:1	3.0 – 5.0
5:1 to 3:1	5.0 – 10.0
2:2 to 1:1	10.0 – 20.0

Poly-Acrylamide and Copolymer of Acrylamide: Linear copolymer polyacrylamide is packaged as a dry flowable solid. When used as a stand alone stabilizer, it is diluted at a rate of 11lb/1,000 gal of water and applied at the rate of 5.0 lb/acre.

Hydro-Colloid Polymers: Hydro-Colloid Polymers are various combinations of dry flowable poly-acrylamides, copolymers and hydro-colloid polymers that are mixed with water and applied to the soil surface at rates of 55 to 60 lb/acre. Drying times are 0 to 4 hours.

***Cementitious-Based Binders***

Gypsum: This is a formulated gypsum based product that readily mixes with water and mulch to form a thin protective crust on the soil surface. It is composed of high purity gypsum that is ground, calcined and processed into calcium sulfate hemihydrate with a minimum purity of 86%. It is mixed in a hydraulic seeder and applied at rates 4,000 to 12,000 lb/acre. Drying time is 4 to 8 hours.

***Applying Soil Binders***

After selecting an appropriate soil binder, the untreated soil surface must be prepared before applying the soil binder. The untreated soil surface must contain sufficient moisture to assist the agent in achieving uniform distribution. In general, the following steps should be followed:

- Follow manufacturer’s written recommendations for application rates, pre-wetting of application area, and cleaning of equipment after use.
- Prior to application, roughen embankment and fill areas.
- Consider the drying time for the selected soil binder and apply with sufficient time before anticipated rainfall. Soil binders should not be applied during or immediately before rainfall.
- Avoid over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, sound walls, existing vegetation, etc.

- Soil binders should not be applied to frozen soil, areas with standing water, under freezing or rainy conditions, or when the temperature is below 40°F during the curing period.
- More than one treatment is often necessary, although the second treatment may be diluted or have a lower application rate.
- Generally, soil binders require a minimum curing time of 24 hours before they are fully effective. Refer to manufacturer's instructions for specific cure time.
- For liquid agents:
  - Crown or slope ground to avoid ponding.
  - Uniformly pre-wet ground at 0.03 to 0.3 gal/yd<sup>2</sup> or according to manufacturer's recommendations.
  - Apply solution under pressure. Overlap solution 6 to 12 in.
  - Allow treated area to cure for the time recommended by the manufacturer; typically at least 24 hours.
  - Apply second treatment before first treatment becomes ineffective, using 50% application rate.
  - In low humidities, reactivate chemicals by re-wetting with water at 0.1 to 0.2 gal/yd<sup>2</sup>.

## Costs

Costs vary according to the soil stabilizer selected for implementation. The following are approximate costs:

Soil Binder	Cost per Acre
Plant-Material Based (Short Lived) Binders	\$400
Plant-Material Based (Long Lived) Binders	\$1,200
Polymeric Emulsion Blend Binders	\$400 <sup>(1)</sup>
Cementitious-Based Binders	\$800

(1) \$1,200 for Acrylic polymers and copolymers

Source: Caltrans Guidance for Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, Nov. 1999

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Areas where erosion is evident shall be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.
- Reapply the selected soil binder as needed to maintain effectiveness.

**References**

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Sedimentation and Erosion Control, An Inventory of Current Practices Draft, US EPA, April 1990.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999.

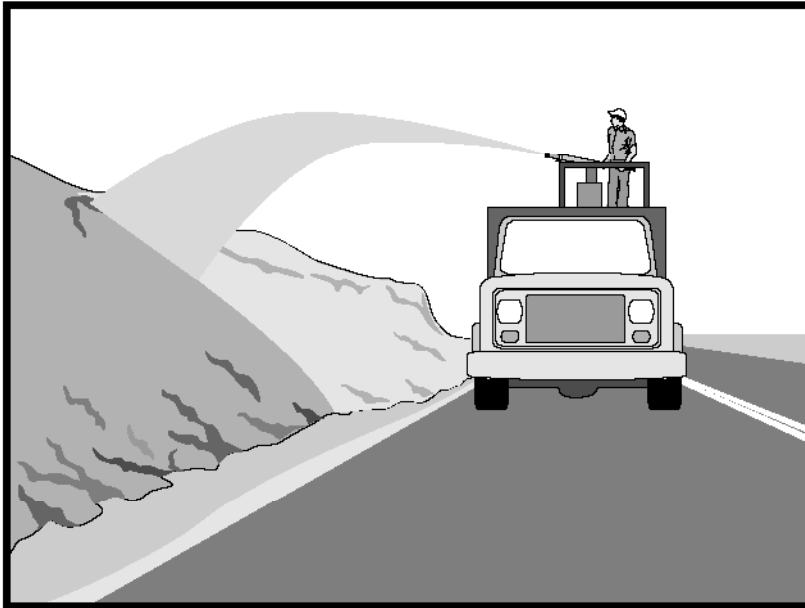
Stormwater Management for Construction Activities, Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

**Table 1 Properties of Soil Binders for Erosion Control**

Evaluation Criteria	Binder Type			
	Plant Material Based (Short Lived)	Plant Material Based (Long Lived)	Polymeric Emulsion Blends	Cementitious-Based Binders
Relative Cost	Low	Low	Low	Low
Resistance to Leaching	High	High	Low to Moderate	Moderate
Resistance to Abrasion	Moderate	Low	Moderate to High	Moderate to High
Longevity	Short to Medium	Medium	Medium to Long	Medium
Minimum Curing Time before Rain	9 to 18 hours	19 to 24 hours	0 to 24 hours	4 to 8 hours
Compatibility with Existing Vegetation	Good	Poor	Poor	Poor
Mode of Degradation	Biodegradable	Biodegradable	Photodegradable/ Chemically Degradable	Photodegradable/ Chemically Degradable
Labor Intensive	No	No	No	No
Specialized Application Equipment	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher
Liquid/Powder	Powder	Liquid	Liquid/Powder	Powder
Surface Crusting	Yes, but dissolves on rewetting	Yes	Yes, but dissolves on rewetting	Yes
Clean Up	Water	Water	Water	Water
Erosion Control Application Rate	Varies <sup>(1)</sup>	Varies <sup>(1)</sup>	Varies <sup>(1)</sup>	4,000 to 12,000 lbs/acre

(1) See Implementation for specific rates.





## Description and Purpose

Straw mulch consists of placing a uniform layer of straw and incorporating it into the soil with a studded roller or anchoring it with a tackifier stabilizing emulsion. Straw mulch protects the soil surface from the impact of rain drops, preventing soil particles from becoming dislodged.

## Suitable Applications

Straw mulch is suitable for soil disturbed areas requiring temporary protection until permanent stabilization is established. Straw mulch is typically used for erosion control on disturbed areas until soils can be prepared for permanent vegetation. Straw mulch is also used in combination with temporary and/or permanent seeding strategies to enhance plant establishment.

## Limitations

- Availability of straw and straw blowing equipment may be limited just prior to the rainy season and prior to storms due to high demand.
- There is a potential for introduction of weed seed and unwanted plant material.
- When straw blowers are used to apply straw mulch, the treatment areas must be within 150 ft of a road or surface capable of supporting trucks.
- Straw mulch applied by hand is more time intensive and potentially costly.

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-4 Hydroseeding
- EC-5 Soil Binders
- EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats
- EC-8 Wood Mulching





- Wind may limit application of straw and blow straw into undesired locations.
- May have to be removed prior to permanent seeding or prior to further earthwork.
- “Punching” of straw does not work in sandy soils, necessitating the use of tackifiers.

**Implementation**

- Straw shall be derived from wheat, rice, or barley. Where required by the plans, specifications, permits, or environmental documents, native grass straw shall be used.
- A tackifier is the preferred method for anchoring straw mulch to the soil on slopes.
- Crimping, punch roller-type rollers, or track walking may also be used to incorporate straw mulch into the soil on slopes. Track walking shall only be used where other methods are impractical.
- Avoid placing straw onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, sound walls, existing vegetation, etc.
- Straw mulch with tackifier shall not be applied during or immediately before rainfall.
- In San Diego, use of straw near wood framed home construction has been frowned on by the Fire Marshall.

**Application Procedures**

- Apply straw at a minimum rate of 4,000 lb/acre, either by machine or by hand distribution.
- Roughen embankments and fill rills before placing the straw mulch by rolling with a crimping or punching type roller or by track walking.
- Evenly distribute straw mulch on the soil surface.
- Anchor straw mulch to the soil surface by “punching” it into the soil mechanically (incorporating). Alternatively, use a tackifier to adhere straw fibers.
- Methods for holding the straw mulch in place depend upon the slope steepness, accessibility, soil conditions, and longevity.
  - On small areas, a spade or shovel can be used to punch in straw mulch.
  - On slopes with soils that are stable enough and of sufficient gradient to safely support construction equipment without contributing to compaction and instability problems, straw can be “punched” into the ground using a knife blade roller or a straight bladed coultter, known commercially as a “crimper”.
  - On small areas and/or steep slopes, straw can also be held in place using plastic netting or jute. The netting shall be held in place using 11 gauge wire staples, geotextile pins or wooden stakes as described in EC-7, Geotextiles and Mats.
  - A tackifier acts to glue the straw fibers together and to the soil surface. The tackifier shall be selected based on longevity and ability to hold the fibers in place. A tackifier is

typically applied at a rate of 125 lb/acre. In windy conditions, the rates are typically 180 lb/acre.

## Costs

Average annual cost for installation and maintenance (3-4 months useful life) is \$2,500 per acre. Application by hand is more time intensive and potentially costly.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Areas where erosion is evident should be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.
- The key consideration in inspection and maintenance is that the straw needs to last long enough to achieve erosion control objectives.
- Maintain an unbroken, temporary mulched ground cover while disturbed soil areas are inactive. Repair any damaged ground cover and re-mulch exposed areas.
- Reapplication of straw mulch and tackifier may be required to maintain effective soil stabilization over disturbed areas and slopes.

## References

Controlling Erosion of Construction Sites, Agricultural Information Bulletin #347, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) (formerly Soil Conservation Service – SCS).

Guides for Erosion and Sediment Control in California, USDA Soils Conservation Service, January 1991.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

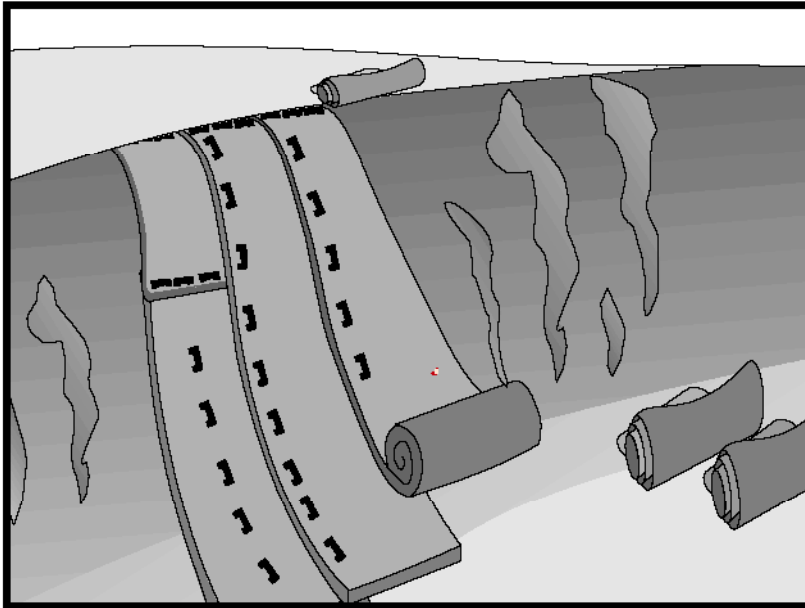
Soil Erosion by Water, Agricultural Information Bulletin #513, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.





## Description and Purpose

Mattings of natural materials are used to cover the soil surface to reduce erosion from rainfall impact, hold soil in place, and absorb and hold moisture near the soil surface. Additionally, matting may be used to stabilize soils until vegetation is established.

## Suitable Applications

Mattings are commonly applied on short, steep slopes where erosion hazard is high and vegetation will be slow to establish. Mattings are also used on stream banks where moving water at velocities between 3 ft/s and 6 ft/s are likely to wash out new vegetation, and in areas where the soil surface is disturbed and where existing vegetation has been removed. Matting may also be used when seeding cannot occur (e.g., late season construction and/or the arrival of an early rain season). Erosion control matting should be considered when the soils are fine grained and potentially erosive. These measures should be considered in the following situations.

- Steep slopes, generally steeper than 3:1 (H:V)
- Slopes where the erosion potential is high
- Slopes and disturbed soils where mulch must be anchored
- Disturbed areas where plants are slow to develop
- Channels with flows exceeding 3.3 ft/s

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	3
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-4 Hydroseeding
- EC-5 Soil Binders
- EC-6 Straw Mulch
- EC-8 Wood Mulching



- Channels to be vegetated
- Stockpiles
- Slopes adjacent to water bodies of Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs)

**Limitations**

- Properly installed mattings provide excellent erosion control but do so at relatively high cost. This high cost typically limits the use of mattings to areas of concentrated channel flow and steep slopes.
- Mattings are more costly than other BMP practices, limiting their use to areas where other BMPs are ineffective (e.g. channels, steep slopes).
- Installation is critical and requires experienced contractors. The contractor should install the matting material in such a manner that continuous contact between the material and the soil occurs.
- Geotextiles and Mats may delay seed germination, due to reduction in soil temperature.
- Blankets and mats are generally not suitable for excessively rocky sites or areas where the final vegetation will be mowed (since staples and netting can catch in mowers).
- Blankets and mats must be removed and disposed of prior to application of permanent soil stabilization measures.
- Plastic sheeting is easily vandalized, easily torn, photodegradable, and must be disposed of at a landfill.
- Plastic results in 100% runoff, which may cause serious erosion problems in the areas receiving the increased flow.
- The use of plastic should be limited to covering stockpiles or very small graded areas for short periods of time (such as through one imminent storm event) until alternative measures, such as seeding and mulching, may be installed.
- Geotextiles, mats, plastic covers, and erosion control covers have maximum flow rate limitations; consult the manufacturer for proper selection.
- Not suitable for areas that have heavy foot traffic (tripping hazard) – e.g., pad areas around buildings under construction.

**Implementation*****Material Selection***

Organic matting materials have been found to be effective where re-vegetation will be provided by re-seeding. The choice of matting should be based on the size of area, side slopes, surface conditions such as hardness, moisture, weed growth, and availability of materials.

The following natural and synthetic mattings are commonly used:

## ***Geotextiles***

- Material should be a woven polypropylene fabric with minimum thickness of 0.06 in., minimum width of 12 ft and should have minimum tensile strength of 150 lbs (warp), 80 lbs (fill) in conformance with the requirements in ASTM Designation: D 4632. The permittivity of the fabric should be approximately  $0.07 \text{ sec}^{-1}$  in conformance with the requirements in ASTM Designation: D4491. The fabric should have an ultraviolet (UV) stability of 70 percent in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation: D4355. Geotextile blankets must be secured in place with wire staples or sandbags and by keying into tops of slopes to prevent infiltration of surface waters under geotextile. Staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- Geotextiles may be reused if they are suitable for the use intended.

## ***Plastic Covers***

- Plastic sheeting should have a minimum thickness of 6 mils, and must be keyed in at the top of slope and firmly held in place with sandbags or other weights placed no more than 10 ft apart. Seams are typically taped or weighted down their entire length, and there should be at least a 12 in. to 24 in. overlap of all seams. Edges should be embedded a minimum of 6 in. in soil.
- All sheeting must be inspected periodically after installation and after significant rainstorms to check for erosion, undermining, and anchorage failure. Any failures must be repaired immediately. If washout or breakages occur, the material should be re-installed after repairing the damage to the slope.

## ***Erosion Control Blankets/Mats***

- Biodegradable rolled erosion control products (RECPs) are typically composed of jute fibers, curled wood fibers, straw, coconut fiber, or a combination of these materials. In order for an RECP to be considered 100% biodegradable, the netting, sewing or adhesive system that holds the biodegradable mulch fibers together must also be biodegradable.
  - **Jute** is a natural fiber that is made into a yarn that is loosely woven into a biodegradable mesh. It is designed to be used in conjunction with vegetation and has longevity of approximately one year. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which should be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
  - **Excelsior** (curled wood fiber) blanket material should consist of machine produced mats of curled wood excelsior with 80 percent of the fiber 6 in. or longer. The excelsior blanket should be of consistent thickness. The wood fiber must be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. The top surface of the blanket should be covered with a photodegradable extruded plastic mesh. The blanket should be smolder resistant without the use of chemical additives and should be non-toxic and non-injurious to plant and animal life. Excelsior blankets should be furnished in rolled strips, a minimum of 48 in. wide, and should have an average weight of  $0.8 \text{ lb/yd}^2$ ,  $\pm 10$  percent, at the time of manufacture. Excelsior blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples

should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.

- **Straw blanket** should be machine produced mats of straw with a lightweight biodegradable netting top layer. The straw should be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The straw blanket should be of consistent thickness. The straw should be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Straw blanket should be furnished in rolled strips a minimum of 6.5 ft wide, a minimum of 80 ft long and a minimum of 0.5 lb/yd<sup>2</sup>. Straw blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- **Wood fiber blanket** is composed of biodegradable fiber mulch with extruded plastic netting held together with adhesives. The material is designed to enhance re-vegetation. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which must be secured to the ground with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Coconut fiber blanket** should be a machine produced mat of 100 percent coconut fiber with biodegradable netting on the top and bottom. The coconut fiber should be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The coconut fiber blanket should be of consistent thickness. The coconut fiber should be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Coconut fiber blanket should be furnished in rolled strips with a minimum of 6.5 ft wide, a minimum of 80 ft. long and a minimum of 0.5 lb/yd<sup>2</sup>. Coconut fiber blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- **Coconut fiber mesh** is a thin permeable membrane made from coconut or corn fiber that is spun into a yarn and woven into a biodegradable mat. It is designed to be used in conjunction with vegetation and typically has longevity of several years. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which must be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Straw coconut fiber blanket** should be machine produced mats of 70 percent straw and 30 percent coconut fiber with a biodegradable netting top layer and a biodegradable bottom net. The straw and coconut fiber should be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The straw coconut fiber blanket should be of consistent thickness. The straw and coconut fiber should be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Straw coconut fiber blanket should be furnished in rolled strips a minimum of 6.5 ft wide, a minimum of 80 ft long and a minimum of 0.5 lb/yd<sup>2</sup>. Straw coconut fiber blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- Non-biodegradable RECPs are typically composed of polypropylene, polyethylene, nylon or other synthetic fibers. In some cases, a combination of biodegradable and synthetic fibers is used to construct the RECP. Netting used to hold these fibers together is typically non-biodegradable as well.

- **Plastic netting** is a lightweight biaxially oriented netting designed for securing loose mulches like straw or paper to soil surfaces to establish vegetation. The netting is photodegradable. The netting is supplied in rolled strips, which must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Plastic mesh** is an open weave geotextile that is composed of an extruded synthetic fiber woven into a mesh with an opening size of less than ¼ in. It is used with re-vegetation or may be used to secure loose fiber such as straw to the ground. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which must be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Synthetic fiber with netting** is a mat that is composed of durable synthetic fibers treated to resist chemicals and ultraviolet light. The mat is a dense, three dimensional mesh of synthetic (typically polyolefin) fibers stitched between two polypropylene nets. The mats are designed to be re-vegetated and provide a permanent composite system of soil, roots, and geomatrix. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Bonded synthetic fibers** consist of a three dimensional geomatrix nylon (or other synthetic) matting. Typically it has more than 90 percent open area, which facilitates root growth. It's tough root reinforcing system anchors vegetation and protects against hydraulic lift and shear forces created by high volume discharges. It can be installed over prepared soil, followed by seeding into the mat. Once vegetated, it becomes an invisible composite system of soil, roots, and geomatrix. The material is furnished in rolled strips that must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Combination synthetic and biodegradable RECPs** consist of biodegradable fibers, such as wood fiber or coconut fiber, with a heavy polypropylene net stitched to the top and a high strength continuous filament geomatrix or net stitched to the bottom. The material is designed to enhance re-vegetation. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

## ***Site Preparation***

- Proper site preparation is essential to ensure complete contact of the blanket or matting with the soil.
- Grade and shape the area of installation.
- Remove all rocks, clods, vegetation or other obstructions so that the installed blankets or mats will have complete, direct contact with the soil.
- Prepare seedbed by loosening 2 to 3 in. of topsoil.

## ***Seeding***

Seed the area before blanket installation for erosion control and revegetation. Seeding after mat installation is often specified for turf reinforcement application. When seeding prior to blanket



installation, all check slots and other areas disturbed during installation must be re-seeded. Where soil filling is specified, seed the matting and the entire disturbed area after installation and prior to filling the mat with soil.

Fertilize and seed in accordance with seeding specifications or other types of landscaping plans. When using jute matting on a seeded area, apply approximately half the seed before laying the mat and the remainder after laying the mat. The protective matting can be laid over areas where grass has been planted and the seedlings have emerged. Where vines or other ground covers are to be planted, lay the protective matting first and then plant through matting according to design of planting.

### ***Check Slots***

Check slots are made of glass fiber strips, excelsior matting strips or tight folded jute matting blanket or strips for use on steep, highly erodible watercourses. The check slots are placed in narrow trenches 6 to 12 in. deep across the channel and left flush with the soil surface. They are to cover the full cross section of designed flow.

### ***Laying and Securing Matting***

- Before laying the matting, all check slots should be installed and the friable seedbed made free from clods, rocks, and roots. The surface should be compacted and finished according to the requirements of the manufacturer's recommendations.
- Mechanical or manual lay down equipment should be capable of handling full rolls of fabric and laying the fabric smoothly without wrinkles or folds. The equipment should meet the fabric manufacturer's recommendations or equivalent standards.

### ***Anchoring***

- U-shaped wire staples, metal geotextile stake pins, or triangular wooden stakes can be used to anchor mats and blankets to the ground surface.
- Wire staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- Metal stake pins should be 0.188 in. diameter steel with a 1.5 in. steel washer at the head of the pin, and 8 in. in length.
- Wire staples and metal stakes should be driven flush to the soil surface.

### ***Installation on Slopes***

Installation should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In general, these will be as follows:

- Begin at the top of the slope and anchor the blanket in a 6 in. deep by 6 in. wide trench. Backfill trench and tamp earth firmly.
- Unroll blanket down slope in the direction of water flow.
- Overlap the edges of adjacent parallel rolls 2 to 3 in. and staple every 3 ft.

- When blankets must be spliced, place blankets end over end (shingle style) with 6 in. overlap. Staple through overlapped area, approximately 12 in. apart.
- Lay blankets loosely and maintain direct contact with the soil. Do not stretch.
- Staple blankets sufficiently to anchor blanket and maintain contact with the soil. Staples should be placed down the center and staggered with the staples placed along the edges. Steep slopes, 1:1 (H:V) to 2:1 (H:V), require a minimum of 2 staples/yd<sup>2</sup>. Moderate slopes, 2:1 (H:V) to 3:1 (H:V), require a minimum of 1 1/2 staples/yd<sup>2</sup>.

### ***Installation in Channels***

Installation should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In general, these will be as follows:

- Dig initial anchor trench 12 in. deep and 6 in. wide across the channel at the lower end of the project area.
- Excavate intermittent check slots, 6 in. deep and 6 in. wide across the channel at 25 to 30 ft intervals along the channels.
- Cut longitudinal channel anchor trenches 4 in. deep and 4 in. wide along each side of the installation to bury edges of matting, whenever possible extend matting 2 to 3 in. above the crest of the channel side slopes.
- Beginning at the downstream end and in the center of the channel, place the initial end of the first roll in the anchor trench and secure with fastening devices at 12 in. intervals. Note: matting will initially be upside down in anchor trench.
- In the same manner, position adjacent rolls in anchor trench, overlapping the preceding roll a minimum of 3 in.
- Secure these initial ends of mats with anchors at 12 in. intervals, backfill and compact soil.
- Unroll center strip of matting upstream. Stop at next check slot or terminal anchor trench. Unroll adjacent mats upstream in similar fashion, maintaining a 3 in. overlap.
- Fold and secure all rolls of matting snugly into all transverse check slots. Lay mat in the bottom of the slot then fold back against itself. Anchor through both layers of mat at 12 in. intervals, then backfill and compact soil. Continue rolling all mat widths upstream to the next check slot or terminal anchor trench.
- Alternate method for non-critical installations: Place two rows of anchors on 6 in. centers at 25 to 30 ft. intervals in lieu of excavated check slots.
- Staple shingled lap spliced ends a minimum of 12 in. apart on 12 in. intervals.
- Place edges of outside mats in previously excavated longitudinal slots; anchor using prescribed staple pattern, backfill, and compact soil.
- Anchor, fill, and compact upstream end of mat in a 12 in. by 6 in. terminal trench.

- Secure mat to ground surface using U-shaped wire staples, geotextile pins, or wooden stakes.
- Seed and fill turf reinforcement matting with soil, if specified.

***Soil Filling (if specified for turf reinforcement)***

- Always consult the manufacturer’s recommendations for installation.
- Do not drive tracked or heavy equipment over mat.
- Avoid any traffic over matting if loose or wet soil conditions exist.
- Use shovels, rakes, or brooms for fine grading and touch up.
- Smooth out soil filling just exposing top netting of mat.

***Temporary Soil Stabilization Removal***

- Temporary soil stabilization removed from the site of the work must be disposed of if necessary.

**Costs**

Relatively high compared to other BMPs. Biodegradable materials: \$0.50 - \$0.57/yd<sup>2</sup>. Permanent materials: \$3.00 - \$4.50/yd<sup>2</sup>. Staples: \$0.04 - \$0.05/staple. Approximate costs for installed materials are shown below:

<b>Rolled Erosion Control Products</b>		<b>Installed Cost per Acre</b>
<b>Biodegradable</b>	Jute Mesh	\$6,500
	Curled Wood Fiber	\$10,500
	Straw	\$8,900
	Wood Fiber	\$8,900
	Coconut Fiber	\$13,000
	Coconut Fiber Mesh	\$31,200
	Straw Coconut Fiber	\$10,900
<b>Non-Biodegradable</b>	Plastic Netting	\$2,000
	Plastic Mesh	\$3,200
	Synthetic Fiber with Netting	\$34,800
	Bonded Synthetic Fibers	\$50,000
	Combination with Biodegradable	\$32,000

Source: Caltrans Guidance for Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, Nov. 1999

***Inspection and Maintenance***

- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharges daily while non-stormwater discharges occur.

- Areas where erosion is evident shall be repaired and BMPs reapplied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require reapplication of BMPs.
- If washout or breakage occurs, re-install the material after repairing the damage to the slope or channel.
- Make sure matting is uniformly in contact with the soil.
- Check that all the lap joints are secure.
- Check that staples are flush with the ground.
- Check that disturbed areas are seeded.

## References

Guides for Erosion and Sediment Controls in California, USDA Soils Conservation Service, January 1991.

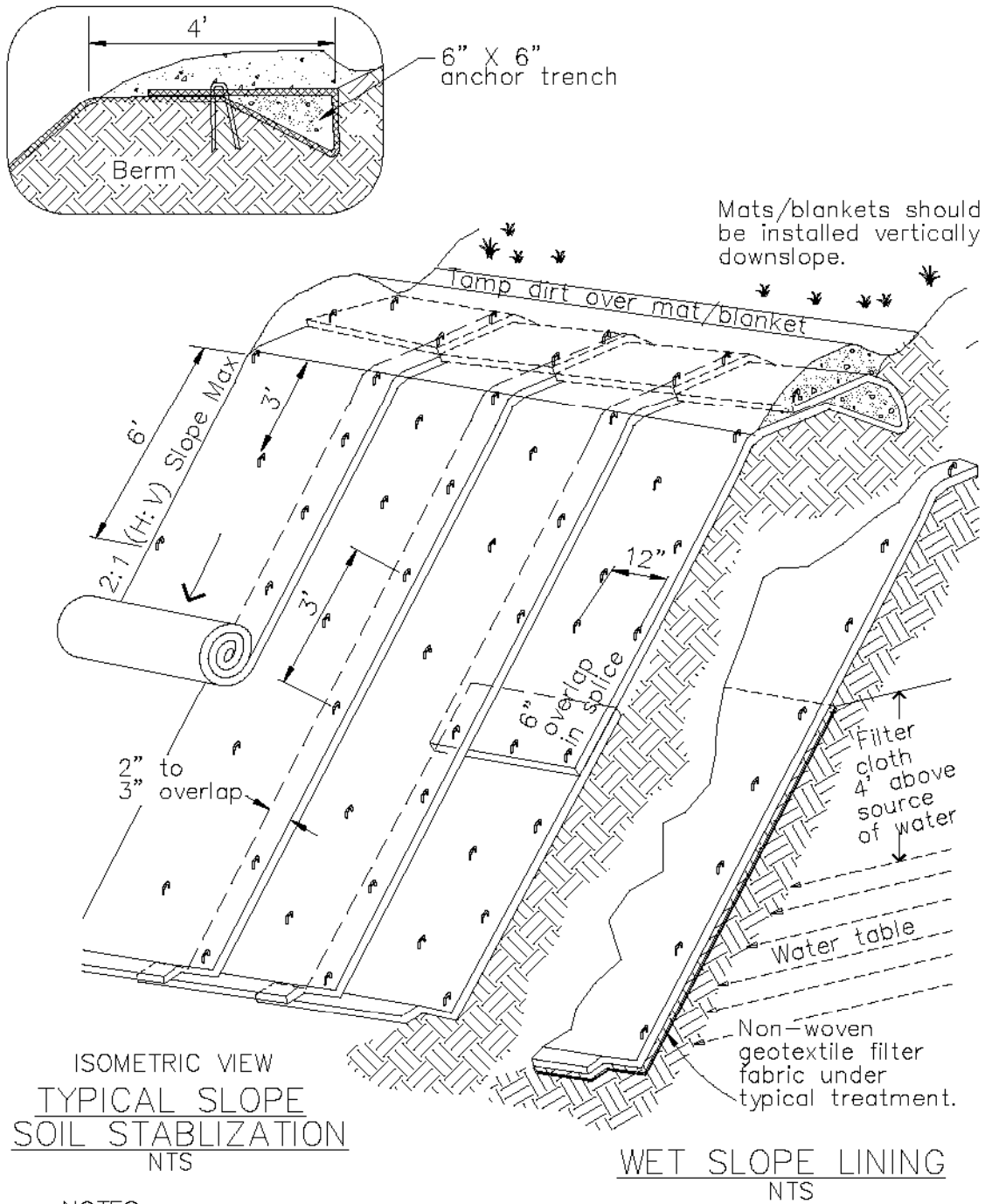
National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

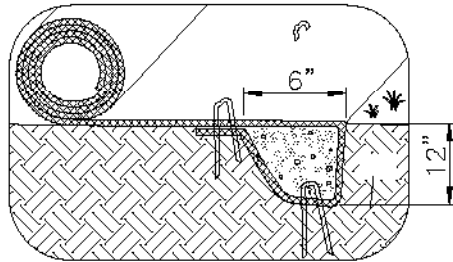
Water Quality Management Plan for The Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



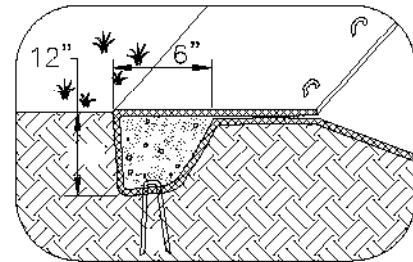
NOTES:

1. Slope surface shall be free of rocks, clods, sticks and grass. Mats/blankets shall have good soil contact.
2. Lay blankets loosely and stake or staple to maintain direct contact with the soil. Do not stretch.
3. Install per manufacturer's recommendations

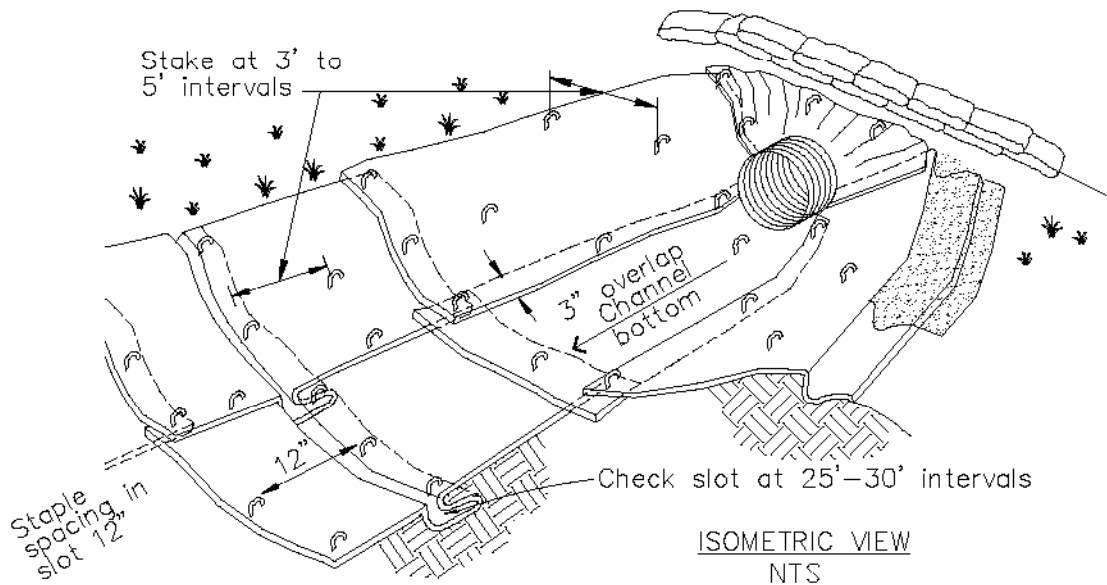
TYPICAL INSTALLATION DETAIL



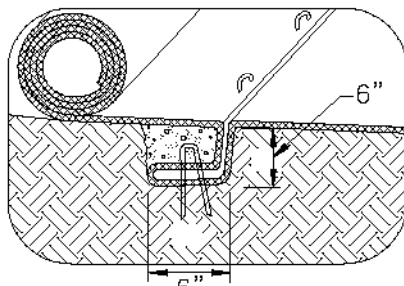
INITIAL CHANNEL ANCHOR TRENCH  
NTS



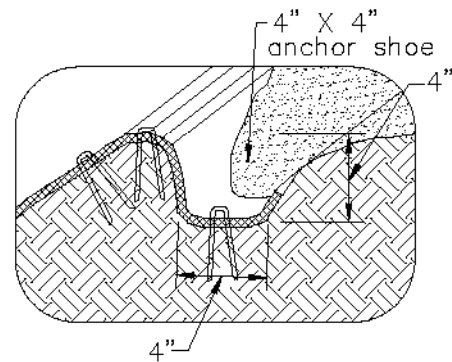
TERMINAL SLOPE AND CHANNEL ANCHOR TRENCH  
NTS



ISOMETRIC VIEW  
NTS



INTERMITTENT CHECK SLOT  
NTS



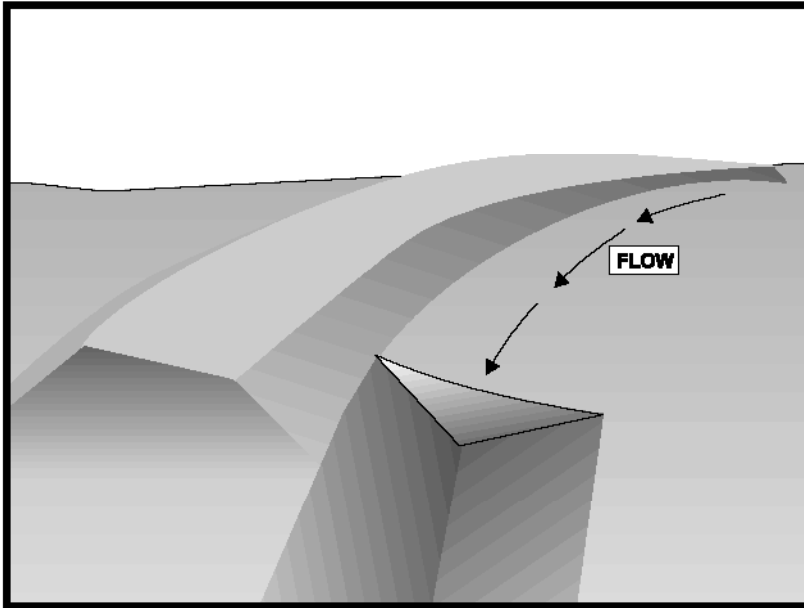
LONGITUDINAL ANCHOR TRENCH  
NTS

**NOTES:**

1. Check slots to be constructed per manufacturers specifications.
2. Staking or stapling layout per manufacturers specifications.
3. Install per manufacturer's recommendations

TYPICAL INSTALLATION DETAIL





## Description and Purpose

An earth dike is a temporary berm or ridge of compacted soil used to divert runoff or channel water to a desired location. A drainage swale is a shaped and sloped depression in the soil surface used to convey runoff to a desired location. Earth dikes and drainage swales are used to divert off site runoff around the construction site, divert runoff from stabilized areas and disturbed areas, and direct runoff into sediment basins or traps.

## Suitable Applications

Earth dikes and drainage swales are suitable for use, individually or together, where runoff needs to be diverted from one area and conveyed to another.

- Earth dikes and drainage swales may be used:
  - To convey surface runoff down sloping land
  - To intercept and divert runoff to avoid sheet flow over sloped surfaces
  - To divert and direct runoff towards a stabilized watercourse, drainage pipe or channel
  - To intercept runoff from paved surfaces
  - Below steep grades where runoff begins to concentrate
  - Along roadways and facility improvements subject to flood drainage

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

None





## **EC-9 Earth Dikes and Drainage Swales**

---

- At the top of slopes to divert runoff from adjacent or undisturbed slopes
- At bottom and mid slope locations to intercept sheet flow and convey concentrated flows
- Divert sediment laden runoff into sediment basins or traps

### **Limitations**

Dikes should not be used for drainage areas greater than 10 acres or along slopes greater than 10 percent. For larger areas more permanent drainage structures should be built. All drainage structures should be built in compliance with local municipal requirements.

- Earth dikes may create more disturbed area on site and become barriers to construction equipment.
- Earth dikes must be stabilized immediately, which adds cost and maintenance concerns.
- Diverted stormwater may cause downstream flood damage.
- Dikes should not be constructed of soils that may be easily eroded.
- Regrading the site to remove the dike may add additional cost.
- Temporary drains and swales or any other diversion of runoff should not adversely impact upstream or downstream properties.
- Temporary drains and swales must conform to local floodplain management requirements.
- Earth dikes/drainage swales are not suitable as sediment trapping devices.
- It may be necessary to use other soil stabilization and sediment controls such as check dams, plastics, and blankets, to prevent scour and erosion in newly graded dikes, swales, and ditches.

### **Implementation**

The temporary earth dike is a berm or ridge of compacted soil, located in such a manner as to divert stormwater to a sediment trapping device or a stabilized outlet, thereby reducing the potential for erosion and offsite sedimentation. Earth dikes can also be used to divert runoff from off site and from undisturbed areas away from disturbed areas and to divert sheet flows away from unprotected slopes.

An earth dike does not itself control erosion or remove sediment from runoff. A dike prevents erosion by directing runoff to an erosion control device such as a sediment trap or directing runoff away from an erodible area. Temporary diversion dikes should not adversely impact adjacent properties and must conform to local floodplain management regulations, and should not be used in areas with slopes steeper than 10%.

Slopes that are formed during cut and fill operations should be protected from erosion by runoff. A combination of a temporary drainage swale and an earth dike at the top of a slope can divert runoff to a location where it can be brought to the bottom of the slope (see EC-11, Slope Drains). A combination dike and swale is easily constructed by a single pass of a bulldozer or grader and

compacted by a second pass of the tracks or wheels over the ridge. Diversion structures should be installed when the site is initially graded and remain in place until post construction BMPs are installed and the slopes are stabilized.

Diversion practices concentrate surface runoff, increasing its velocity and erosive force. Thus, the flow out of the drain or swale must be directed onto a stabilized area or into a grade stabilization structure. If significant erosion will occur, a swale should be stabilized using vegetation, chemical treatment, rock rip-rap, matting, or other physical means of stabilization. Any drain or swale that conveys sediment laden runoff must be diverted into a sediment basin or trap before it is discharged from the site.

## ***General***

- Care must be applied to correctly size and locate earth dikes, drainage swales. Excessively steep, unlined dikes, and swales are subject to erosion and gully formation.
- Conveyances should be stabilized.
- Use a lined ditch for high flow velocities.
- Select flow velocity based on careful evaluation of the risks due to erosion of the measure, soil types, overtopping, flow backups, washout, and drainage flow patterns for each project site.
- Compact any fills to prevent unequal settlement.
- Do not divert runoff onto other property without securing written authorization from the property owner.
- When possible, install and utilize permanent dikes, swales, and ditches early in the construction process.
- Provide stabilized outlets.

## ***Earth Dikes***

Temporary earth dikes are a practical, inexpensive BMP used to divert stormwater runoff. Temporary diversion dikes should be installed in the following manner:

- All dikes should be compacted by earth moving equipment.
- All dikes should have positive drainage to an outlet.
- All dikes should have 2:1 or flatter side slopes, 18 in. minimum height, and a minimum top width of 24 in. Wide top widths and flat slopes are usually needed at crossings for construction traffic.
- The outlet from the earth dike must function with a minimum of erosion. Runoff should be conveyed to a sediment trapping device such as a Sediment Trap (SE-3) or Sediment Basin (SE-2) when either the dike channel or the drainage area above the dike are not adequately stabilized.

## EC-9 Earth Dikes and Drainage Swales

- Temporary stabilization may be achieved using seed and mulching for slopes less than 5% and either rip-rap or sod for slopes in excess of 5%. In either case, stabilization of the earth dike should be completed immediately after construction or prior to the first rain.
- If riprap is used to stabilize the channel formed along the toe of the dike, the following typical specifications apply:

Channel Grade	Riprap Stabilization
0.5-1.0%	4 in. Rock
1.1-2.0%	6 in. Rock
2.1-4.0%	8 in. Rock
4.1-5.0%	8 in. -12 in. Riprap

- The stone riprap, recycled concrete, etc. used for stabilization should be pressed into the soil with construction equipment.
- Filter cloth may be used to cover dikes in use for long periods.
- Construction activity on the earth dike should be kept to a minimum.

### ***Drainage Swales***

Drainage swales are only effective if they are properly installed. Swales are more effective than dikes because they tend to be more stable. The combination of a swale with a dike on the downhill side is the most cost effective diversion.

Standard engineering design criteria for small open channel and closed conveyance systems should be used (see the local drainage design manual). Unless local drainage design criteria state otherwise, drainage swales should be designed as follows:

- No more than 5 acres may drain to a temporary drainage swale.
- Place drainage swales above or below, not on, a cut or fill slope.
- Swale bottom width should be at least 2 ft
- Depth of the swale should be at least 18 in.
- Side slopes should be 2:1 or flatter.
- Drainage or swales should be laid at a grade of at least 1 percent, but not more than 15 percent.
- The swale must not be overtopped by the peak discharge from a 10-year storm, irrespective of the design criteria stated above.
- Remove all trees, stumps, obstructions, and other objectionable material from the swale when it is built.
- Compact any fill material along the path of the swale.

- Stabilize all swales immediately. Seed and mulch swales at a slope of less than 5 percent, and use rip-rap or sod for swales with a slope between 5 and 15 percent. For temporary swales, geotextiles and mats (EC-7) may provide immediate stabilization.
- Irrigation may be required to establish sufficient vegetation to prevent erosion.
- Do not operate construction vehicles across a swale unless a stabilized crossing is provided.
- Permanent drainage facilities must be designed by a professional engineer (see the local drainage design criteria for proper design).
- At a minimum, the drainage swale should conform to predevelopment drainage patterns and capacities.
- Construct the drainage swale with a positive grade to a stabilized outlet.
- Provide erosion protection or energy dissipation measures if the flow out of the drainage swale can reach an erosive velocity.

## Costs

- Cost ranges from \$15 to \$55 per ft for both earthwork and stabilization and depends on availability of material, site location, and access.
- Small dikes: \$2.50 - \$6.50/linear ft; Large dikes: \$2.50/yd<sup>3</sup>.
- The cost of a drainage swale increases with drainage area and slope. Typical swales for controlling internal erosion are inexpensive, as they are quickly formed during routine earthwork.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharges daily while non-stormwater discharges occur.
- Inspect ditches and berms for washouts. Replace lost riprap, damaged linings or soil stabilizers as needed.
- Inspect channel linings, embankments, and beds of ditches and berms for erosion and accumulation of debris and sediment. Remove debris and sediment and repair linings and embankments as needed.
- Temporary conveyances should be completely removed as soon as the surrounding drainage area has been stabilized or at the completion of construction

## References

Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook, S.J. Goldman, K. Jackson, T.A. Bursetynsky, P.E., McGraw Hill Book Company, 1986.

## **EC-9 Earth Dikes and Drainage Swales**

---

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

National Association of Home Builders (NAHB). Stormwater Runoff & Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Guide for Builders and Developers. National Association of Home Builders, Washington, D.C., 1995

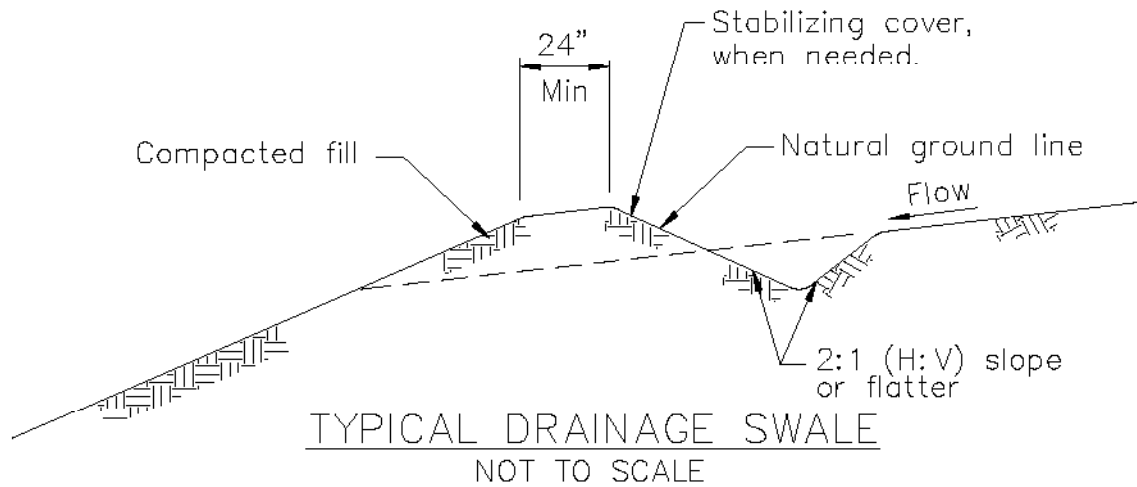
National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission (SWRPC). Costs of Urban Nonpoint Source Water Pollution Control Measures. Technical Report No. 31. Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission, Waukesha, WI. 1991

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

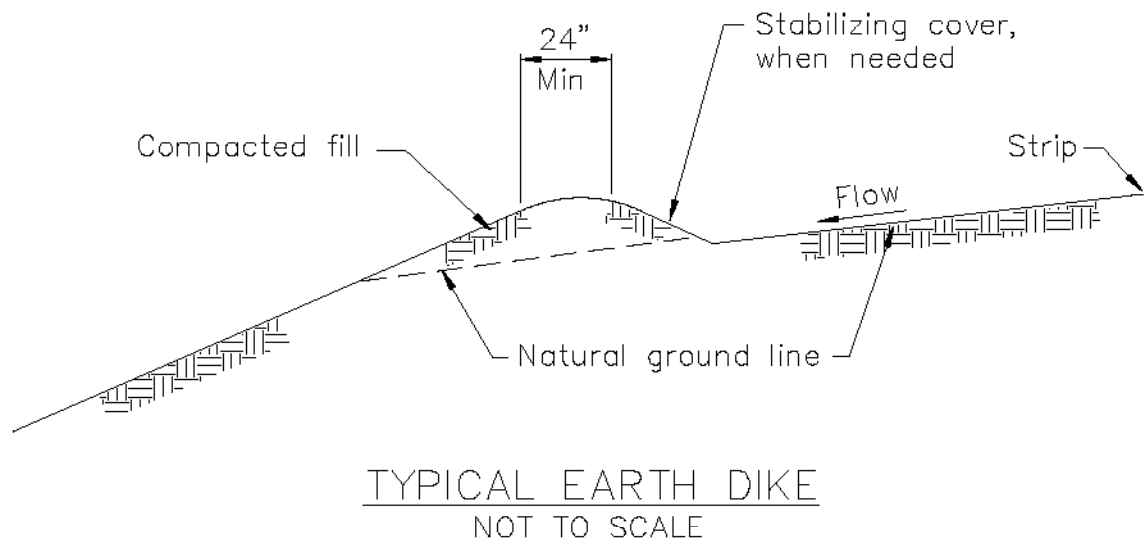
Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

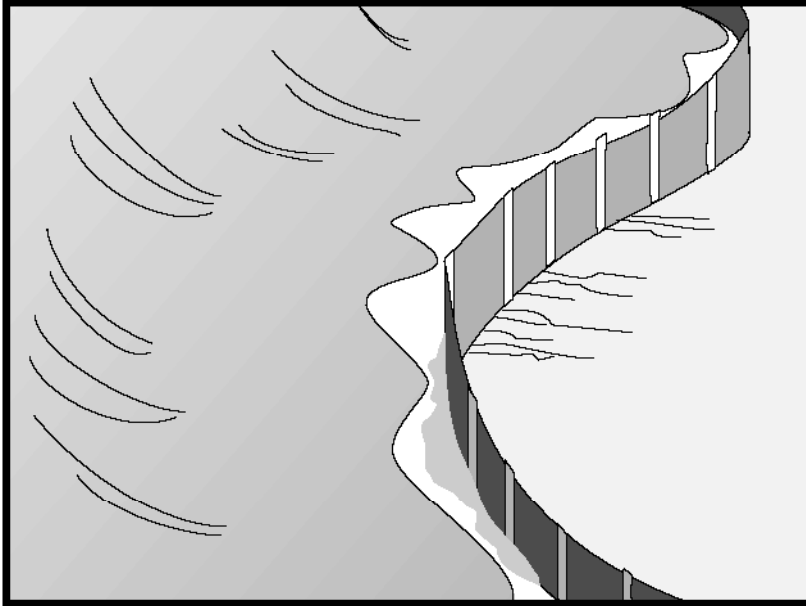


NOTES:

1. Stabilize inlet, outlets and slopes.
2. Properly compact the subgrade.







## Description and Purpose

A silt fence is made of a filter fabric that has been entrenched, attached to supporting poles, and sometimes backed by a plastic or wire mesh for support. The silt fence detains sediment-laden water, promoting sedimentation behind the fence.

## Suitable Applications

Silt fences are suitable for perimeter control, placed below areas where sheet flows discharge from the site. They should also be used as interior controls below disturbed areas where runoff may occur in the form of sheet and rill erosion. Silt fences are generally ineffective in locations where the flow is concentrated and are only applicable for sheet or overland flows. Silt fences are most effective when used in combination with erosion controls. Suitable applications include:

- Along the perimeter of a project.
- Below the toe or down slope of exposed and erodible slopes.
- Along streams and channels.
- Around temporary spoil areas and stockpiles.
- Below other small cleared areas.

## Limitations

- Do not use in streams, channels, drain inlets, or anywhere flow is concentrated.

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- SE-5 Fiber Rolls
- SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm
- SE-8 Sandbag Barrier
- SE-9 Straw Bale Barrier





- Do not use in locations where ponded water may cause flooding.
- Do not place fence on a slope, or across any contour line. If not installed at the same elevation throughout, silt fences will create erosion.
- Filter fences will create a temporary sedimentation pond on the upstream side of the fence and may cause temporary flooding. Fences not constructed on a level contour will be overtopped by concentrated flow resulting in failure of the filter fence.
- Improperly installed fences are subject to failure from undercutting, overlapping, or collapsing.
  - Not effective unless trenched and keyed in.
  - Not intended for use as mid-slope protection on slopes greater than 4:1 (H:V).
  - Do not allow water depth to exceed 1.5 ft at any point.

## Implementation

### *General*

A silt fence is a temporary sediment barrier consisting of filter fabric stretched across and attached to supporting posts, entrenched, and, depending upon the strength of fabric used, supported with plastic or wire mesh fence. Silt fences trap sediment by intercepting and detaining small amounts of sediment-laden runoff from disturbed areas in order to promote sedimentation behind the fence.

Silt fences are preferable to straw bale barriers in many cases. Laboratory work at the Virginia Highway and Transportation Research Council has shown that silt fences can trap a much higher percentage of suspended sediments than can straw bales. While the failure rate of silt fences is lower than that of straw bale barriers, there are many instances where silt fences have been improperly installed. The following layout and installation guidance can improve performance and should be followed:

- Use principally in areas where sheet flow occurs.
- Don't use in streams, channels, or anywhere flow is concentrated. Don't use silt fences to divert flow.
- Don't use below slopes subject to creep, slumping, or landslides.
- Select filter fabric that retains 85% of soil by weight, based on sieve analysis, but that is not finer than an equivalent opening size of 70.
- Install along a level contour, so water does not pond more than 1.5 ft at any point along the silt fence.
- The maximum length of slope draining to any point along the silt fence should be 200 ft or less.
- The maximum slope perpendicular to the fence line should be 1:1.

- Provide sufficient room for runoff to pond behind the fence and to allow sediment removal equipment to pass between the silt fence and toes of slopes or other obstructions. About 1200 ft<sup>2</sup> of ponding area should be provided for every acre draining to the fence.
- Turn the ends of the filter fence uphill to prevent stormwater from flowing around the fence.
- Leave an undisturbed or stabilized area immediately down slope from the fence where feasible.
- Silt fences should remain in place until the disturbed area is permanently stabilized.

### ***Design and Layout***

Selection of a filter fabric is based on soil conditions at the construction site (which affect the equivalent opening size (EOS) fabric specification) and characteristics of the support fence (which affect the choice of tensile strength). The designer should specify a filter fabric that retains the soil found on the construction site yet that it has openings large enough to permit drainage and prevent clogging. The following criteria is recommended for selection of the equivalent opening size:

1. If 50 percent or less of the soil, by weight, will pass the U.S. Standard Sieve No. 200, select the EOS to retain 85 % of the soil. The EOS should not be finer than EOS 70.
2. For all other soil types, the EOS should be no larger than the openings in the U.S. Standard Sieve No. 70 except where direct discharge to a stream, lake, or wetland will occur, then the EOS should be no larger than Standard Sieve No. 100.

To reduce the chance of clogging, it is preferable to specify a fabric with openings as large as allowed by the criteria. No fabric should be specified with an EOS smaller than U.S. Standard Sieve No. 100. If 85% or more of a soil, by weight, passes through the openings in a No. 200 sieve, filter fabric should not be used. Most of the particles in such a soil would not be retained if the EOS was too large and they would clog the fabric quickly if the EOS were small enough to capture the soil.

The fence should be supported by a plastic or wire mesh if the fabric selected does not have sufficient strength and bursting strength characteristics for the planned application (as recommended by the fabric manufacturer). Filter fabric material should contain ultraviolet inhibitors and stabilizers to provide a minimum of six months of expected usable construction life at a temperature range of 0 °F to 120 °F.

- Layout in accordance with attached figures.
- For slopes steeper than 2:1 (H:V) and that contain a high number of rocks or large dirt clods that tend to dislodge, it may be necessary to install additional protection immediately adjacent to the bottom of the slope, prior to installing silt fence. Additional protection may be a chain link fence or a cable fence.
- For slopes adjacent to sensitive receiving waters or Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs), silt fence should be used in conjunction with erosion control BMPs.

**Materials**

- Silt fence fabric should be woven polypropylene with a minimum width of 36 in. and a minimum tensile strength of 100 lb force. The fabric should conform to the requirements in ASTM designation D4632 and should have an integral reinforcement layer. The reinforcement layer should be a polypropylene, or equivalent, net provided by the manufacturer. The permittivity of the fabric should be between  $0.1 \text{ sec}^{-1}$  and  $0.15 \text{ sec}^{-1}$  in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D4491.
- Wood stakes should be commercial quality lumber of the size and shape shown on the plans. Each stake should be free from decay, splits or cracks longer than the thickness of the stake or other defects that would weaken the stakes and cause the stakes to be structurally unsuitable.
- Staples used to fasten the fence fabric to the stakes should be not less than 1.75 in. long and should be fabricated from 15 gauge or heavier wire. The wire used to fasten the tops of the stakes together when joining two sections of fence should be 9 gauge or heavier wire. Galvanizing of the fastening wire will not be required.
- There are new products that may use prefabricated plastic holders for the silt fence and use bar reinforcement instead of wood stakes. If bar reinforcement is used in lieu of wood stakes, use number four or greater bar. Provide end protection for any exposed bar reinforcement.

**Installation Guidelines**

Silt fences are to be constructed on a level contour. Sufficient area should exist behind the fence for ponding to occur without flooding or overtopping the fence.

- A trench should be excavated approximately 6 in. wide and 6 in. deep along the line the proposed silt fence.
- Bottom of the silt fence should be keyed-in a minimum of 12 in.
- Posts should be spaced a maximum of 6 ft apart and driven securely into the ground a minimum of 18 in. or 12 in. below the bottom of the trench.
- When standard strength filter fabric is used, a plastic or wire mesh support fence should be fastened securely to the upslope side of posts using heavy-duty wire staples at least 1 in. long. The mesh should extend into the trench. When extra-strength filter fabric and closer post spacing are used, the mesh support fence may be eliminated. Filter fabric should be purchased in a long roll, then cut to the length of the barrier. When joints are necessary, filter cloth should be spliced together only at a support post, with a minimum 6 in. overlap and both ends securely fastened to the post.
- The trench should be backfilled with compacted native material.
- Construct silt fences with a setback of at least 3 ft from the toe of a slope. Where a silt fence is determined to be not practicable due to specific site conditions, the silt fence may be constructed at the toe of the slope, but should be constructed as far from the toe of the slope as practicable. Silt fences close to the toe of the slope will be less effective and difficult to maintain.

- Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed 1/3 the height of the barrier; in no case should the reach exceed 500 ft.

## Costs

- Average annual cost for installation and maintenance (assumes 6 month useful life): \$7 per lineal foot (\$850 per drainage acre). Range of cost is \$3.50 - \$9.10 per lineal foot.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Repair undercut silt fences.
- Repair or replace split, torn, slumping, or weathered fabric. The lifespan of silt fence fabric is generally 5 to 8 months.
- Silt fences that are damaged and become unsuitable for the intended purpose should be removed from the site of work, disposed of, and replaced with new silt fence barriers.
- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP must be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height. Sediment removed during maintenance may be incorporated into earthwork on the site or disposed at an appropriate location.
- Silt fences should be left in place until the upstream area is permanently stabilized. Until then, the silt fence must be inspected and maintained.
- Holes, depressions, or other ground disturbance caused by the removal of the silt fences should be backfilled and repaired.

## References

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

Proposed Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters, Work Group-Working Paper, USEPA, April 1992.

Sedimentation and Erosion Control Practices, and Inventory of Current Practices (Draft), UESPA, 1990.

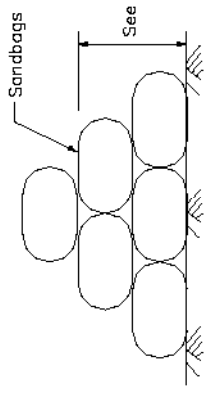
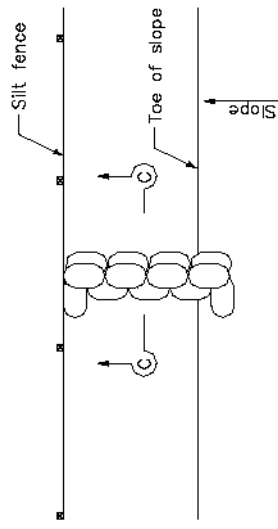
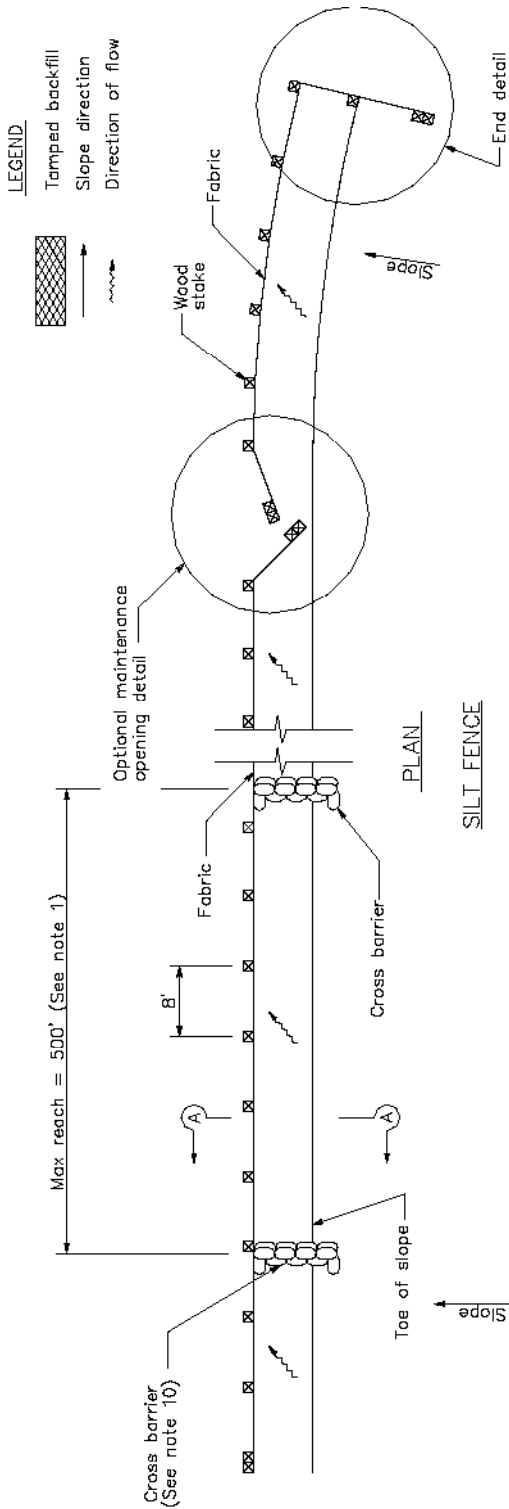
Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission (SWRPC). Costs of Urban Nonpoint Source Water Pollution Control Measures. Technical Report No. 31. Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission, Waukesha, WI. 1991

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management Manual for The Puget Sound Basin, Washington State Department of Ecology, Public Review Draft, 1991.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Stormwater Management for Industrial Activities: Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1992.

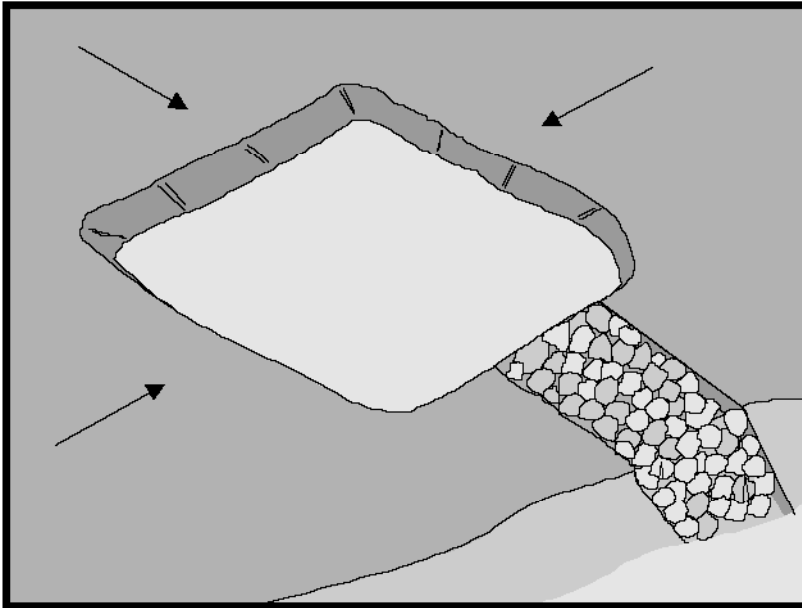
Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



**NOTES**

1. Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed 1/3 the height of the linear barrier, in no case shall the reach length exceed 500'.
2. The last 8'-0" of fence shall be turned up slope.
3. Stake dimensions are nominal.
4. Dimension may vary to fit field condition.
5. Stakes shall be spaced at 8'-0" maximum and shall be positioned on downstream side of fence.
6. Stakes to overlap and fence fabric to fold around each stake one full turn. Secure fabric to stake with 4 staples.
7. Stakes shall be driven tightly together to prevent potential flow-through of sediment at joint. The tops of the stakes shall be secured with wire.
8. For end stake, fence fabric shall be folded around two stakes one full turn and secured with 4 staples.
9. Minimum 4 staples per stake. Dimensions shown are typical.
10. Cross barriers shall be a minimum of 1/3 and a maximum of 1/2 the height of the linear barrier.
11. Maintenance openings shall be constructed in a manner to ensure sediment remains behind silt fence.
12. Joining sections shall not be placed at sump locations.
13. Sandbag rows and layers shall be offset to eliminate gaps.





## Description and Purpose

A sediment trap is a containment area where sediment-laden runoff is temporarily detained under quiescent conditions, allowing sediment to settle out or before the runoff is discharged. Sediment traps are formed by excavating or constructing an earthen embankment across a waterway or low drainage area.

## Suitable Applications

Sediment traps should be considered for use:

- At the perimeter of the site at locations where sediment-laden runoff is discharged offsite.
- At multiple locations within the project site where sediment control is needed.
- Around or upslope from storm drain inlet protection measures.
- Sediment traps may be used on construction projects where the drainage area is less than 5 acres. Traps would be placed where sediment-laden stormwater may enter a storm drain or watercourse. SE-2, Sediment Basins, must be used for drainage areas greater than 5 acres.
- As a supplemental control, sediment traps provide additional protection for a water body or for reducing sediment before it enters a drainage system.

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

SE-2 Sediment Basin (for larger areas)





**Limitations**

- Requires large surface areas to permit infiltration and settling of sediment.
- Not appropriate for drainage areas greater than 5 acres.
- Only removes large and medium sized particles and requires upstream erosion control.
- Attractive and dangerous to children, requiring protective fencing.
- Conducive to vector production.
- Should not be located in live streams.

**Implementation*****Design***

A sediment trap is a small temporary ponding area, usually with a gravel outlet, formed by excavation or by construction of an earthen embankment. Its purpose is to collect and store sediment from sites cleared or graded during construction. It is intended for use on small drainage areas with no unusual drainage features and projected for a quick build-out time. It should help in removing coarse sediment from runoff. The trap is a temporary measure with a design life of approximately six months to one year and is to be maintained until the site area is permanently protected against erosion by vegetation and/or structures.

Sediment traps should be used only for small drainage areas. If the contributing drainage area is greater than 5 acres, refer to SE-2, Sediment Basins, or subdivide the catchment area into smaller drainage basins.

Sediment usually must be removed from the trap after each rainfall event. The SWPPP should detail how this sediment is to be disposed of, such as in fill areas onsite, or removal to an approved offsite dump. Sediment traps used as perimeter controls should be installed before any land disturbance takes place in the drainage area.

Sediment traps are usually small enough that a failure of the structure would not result in a loss of life, damage to home or buildings, or interruption in the use of public roads or utilities. However, sediment traps are attractive to children and can be dangerous. The following recommendations should be implemented to reduce risks:

- Install continuous fencing around the sediment trap or pond. Consult local ordinances regarding requirements for maintaining health and safety.
- Restrict basin side slopes to 3:1 or flatter.

Sediment trap size depends on the type of soil, size of the drainage area, and desired sediment removal efficiency (see SE-2, Sediment Basin). As a rule of thumb, the larger the basin volume the greater the sediment removal efficiency. Sizing criteria are typically established under the local grading ordinance or equivalent. The runoff volume from a 2-year storm is a common design criteria for a sediment trap. The sizing criteria below assume that this runoff volume is 0.042 acre-ft/acre (0.5 in. of runoff). While the climatic, topographic, and soil type extremes make it difficult to establish a statewide standard, the following criteria should trap moderate to high amounts of sediment in most areas of California:

- Locate sediment traps as near as practical to areas producing the sediment.
- Trap should be situated according to the following criteria: (1) by excavating a suitable area or where a low embankment can be constructed across a swale, (2) where failure would not cause loss of life or property damage, and (3) to provide access for maintenance, including sediment removal and sediment stockpiling in a protected area.
- Trap should be sized to accommodate a settling zone and sediment storage zone with recommended minimum volumes of 67 yd<sup>3</sup>/acre and 33 yd<sup>3</sup>/acre of contributing drainage area, respectively, based on 0.5 in. of runoff volume over a 24-hour period. In many cases, the size of an individual trap is limited by available space. Multiple traps or additional volume may be required to accommodate specific rainfall, soil, and site conditions.
- Traps with an impounding levee greater than 4.5 ft tall, measured from the lowest point to the impounding area to the highest point of the levee, and traps capable of impounding more than 35,000 ft<sup>3</sup>, should be designed by a Registered Civil Engineer. The design should include maintenance requirements, including sediment and vegetation removal, to ensure continuous function of the trap outlet and bypass structures.
- The outlet pipe or open spillway must be designed to convey anticipated peak flows.
- Use rock or vegetation to protect the trap outlets against erosion.
- Fencing should be provided to prevent unauthorized entry.

## ***Installation***

Sediment traps can be constructed by excavating a depression in the ground or creating an impoundment with a small embankment. Sediment traps should be installed outside the area being graded and should be built prior to the start of the grading activities or removal of vegetation. To minimize the area disturbed by them, sediment traps should be installed in natural depressions or in small swales or drainage ways. The following steps must be followed during installation:

- The area under the embankment must be cleared, grubbed, and stripped of any vegetation and root mat. The pool area should be cleared.
- The fill material for the embankment must be free of roots or other woody vegetation as well as oversized stones, rocks, organic material, or other objectionable material. The embankment may be compacted by traversing with equipment while it is being constructed.
- All cut-and-fill slopes should be 3:1 or flatter.
- When a riser is used, all pipe joints must be watertight.
- When a riser is used, at least the top two-thirds of the riser should be perforated with 0.5 in. diameter holes spaced 8 in. vertically and 10 to 12 in. horizontally. See SE-2, Sediment Basin.
- When an earth or stone outlet is used, the outlet crest elevation should be at least 1 ft below the top of the embankment.

- When crushed stone outlet is used, the crushed stone used in the outlet should meet AASHTO M43, size No. 2 or 24, or its equivalent such as MSHA No. 2. Gravel meeting the above gradation may be used if crushed stone is not available.

**Costs**

Average annual cost per installation and maintenance (18 month useful life) is \$0.73 per ft<sup>3</sup> (\$1,300 per drainage acre). Maintenance costs are approximately 20% of installation costs.

**Inspection and Maintenance**

- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Inspect outlet area for erosion and stabilize if required.
- Inspect trap banks for seepage and structural soundness, repair as needed.
- Inspect outlet structure and spillway for any damage or obstructions. Repair damage and remove obstructions as needed.
- Inspect fencing for damage and repair as needed.
- Inspect the sediment trap for area of standing water during every visit. Corrective measures should be taken if the BMP does not dewater completely in 72 hours or less to prevent vector production.
- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP must be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the trap capacity. Sediment removed during maintenance may be incorporated into earthwork on the site or disposed of at an appropriate location.
- Remove vegetation from the sediment trap when first detected to prevent pools of standing water and subsequent vector production.
- BMPs that require dewatering shall be continuously attended while dewatering takes place. Dewatering BMPs shall be implemented at all times during dewatering activities.

**References**

Brown, W., and T. Schueler. *The Economics of Stormwater BMPs in the Mid-Atlantic Region*. Prepared for Chesapeake Research Consortium, Edgewater, MD, by the Center for Watershed Protection, Ellicott City, MD, 1997.

Draft – *Sedimentation and Erosion Control, an Inventory of Current Practices*, USEPA, April 1990.

*Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures*, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Metzger, M.E., D.F. Messer, C.L. Beitia, C.M. Myers, and V.L. Kramer, *The Dark Side of Stormwater Runoff Management: Disease Vectors Associated with Structural BMPs*, 2002.

National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

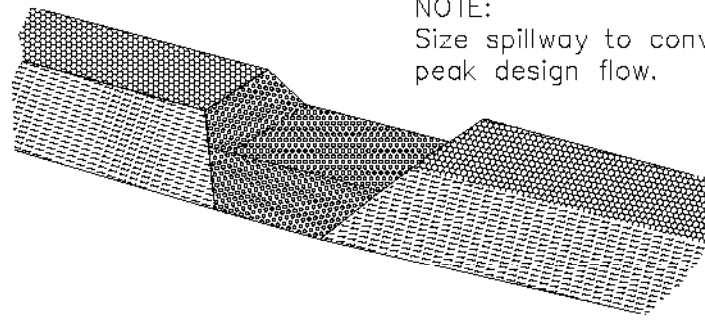
Proposed Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters, Work Group-Working Paper, USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management Manual for The Puget Sound Basin, Washington State Department of Ecology, Public Review Draft, 1991.

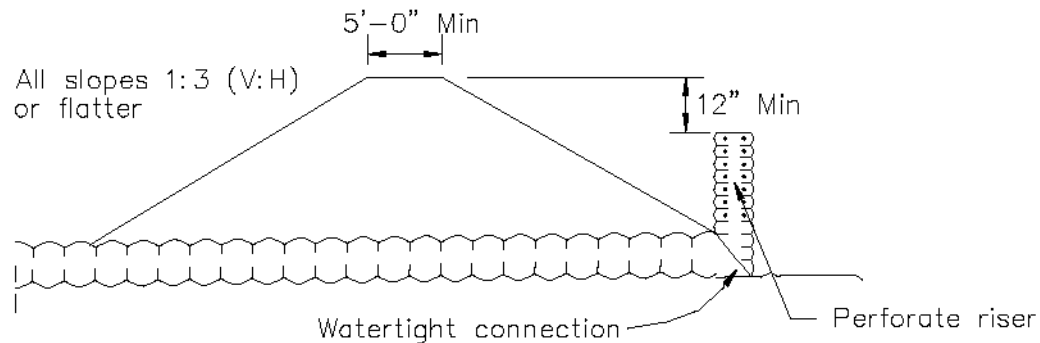
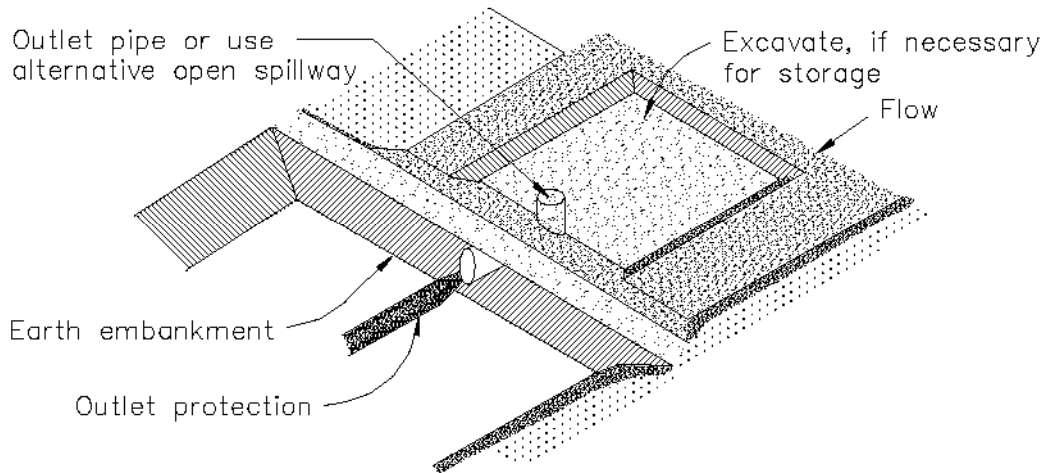
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters. EPA 840-B-9-002. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1993.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



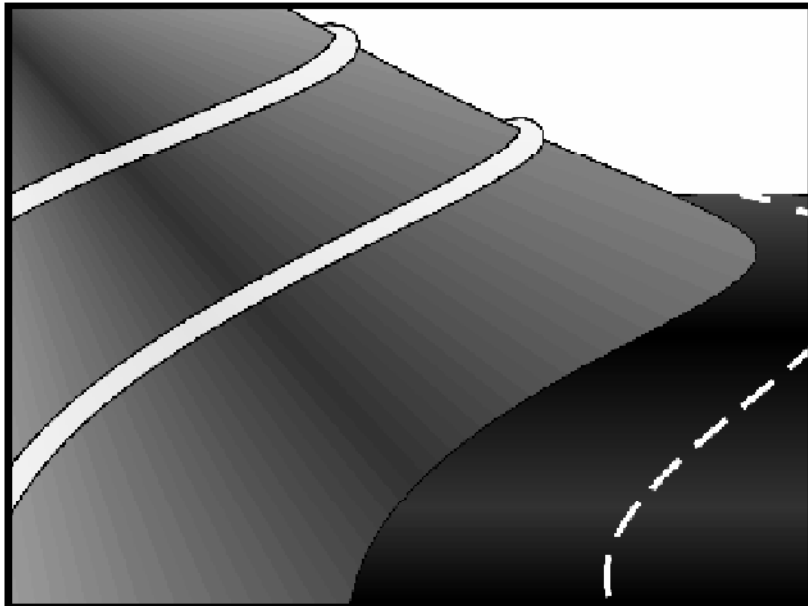
NOTE:  
Size spillway to convey  
peak design flow.

TYPICAL OPEN SPILLWAY



EMBANKMENT SECTION THRU RISER

TYPICAL SEDIMENT TRAP  
NOT TO SCALE



## Description and Purpose

A fiber roll consists of straw, flax, or other similar materials bound into a tight tubular roll. When fiber rolls are placed at the toe and on the face of slopes, they intercept runoff, reduce its flow velocity, release the runoff as sheet flow, and provide removal of sediment from the runoff. By interrupting the length of a slope, fiber rolls can also reduce erosion.

## Suitable Applications

Fiber rolls may be suitable:

- Along the toe, top, face, and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow
- At the end of a downward slope where it transitions to a steeper slope
- Along the perimeter of a project
- As check dams in unlined ditches
- Down-slope of exposed soil areas
- Around temporary stockpiles

## Limitations

- Fiber rolls are not effective unless trenched

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- SE-1 Silt Fence
- SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm
- SE-8 Sandbag Barrier
- SE-9 Straw Bale Barrier



- Fiber rolls at the toe of slopes greater than 5:1 (H:V) should be a minimum of 20 in. diameter or installations achieving the same protection (i.e. stacked smaller diameter fiber rolls, etc.).
- Difficult to move once saturated.
- If not properly staked and trenched in, fiber rolls could be transported by high flows.
- Fiber rolls have a very limited sediment capture zone.
- Fiber rolls should not be used on slopes subject to creep, slumping, or landslide.

### **Implementation**

#### ***Fiber Roll Materials***

- Fiber rolls should be either prefabricated rolls or rolled tubes of erosion control blanket.

#### ***Assembly of Field Rolled Fiber Roll***

- Roll length of erosion control blanket into a tube of minimum 8 in. diameter.
- Bind roll at each end and every 4 ft along length of roll with jute-type twine.

#### ***Installation***

- Locate fiber rolls on level contours spaced as follows:
  - Slope inclination of 4:1 (H:V) or flatter: Fiber rolls should be placed at a maximum interval of 20 ft.
  - Slope inclination between 4:1 and 2:1 (H:V): Fiber Rolls should be placed at a maximum interval of 15 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective).
  - Slope inclination 2:1 (H:V) or greater: Fiber Rolls should be placed at a maximum interval of 10 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective).
- Turn the ends of the fiber roll up slope to prevent runoff from going around the roll.
- Stake fiber rolls into a 2 to 4 in. deep trench with a width equal to the diameter of the fiber roll.
  - Drive stakes at the end of each fiber roll and spaced 4 ft maximum on center.
  - Use wood stakes with a nominal classification of 0.75 by 0.75 in. and minimum length of 24 in.
- If more than one fiber roll is placed in a row, the rolls should be overlapped, not abutted.

#### ***Removal***

- Fiber rolls are typically left in place.

- If fiber rolls are removed, collect and dispose of sediment accumulation, and fill and compact holes, trenches, depressions or any other ground disturbance to blend with adjacent ground.

## Costs

Material costs for fiber rolls range from \$20 - \$30 per 25 ft roll.

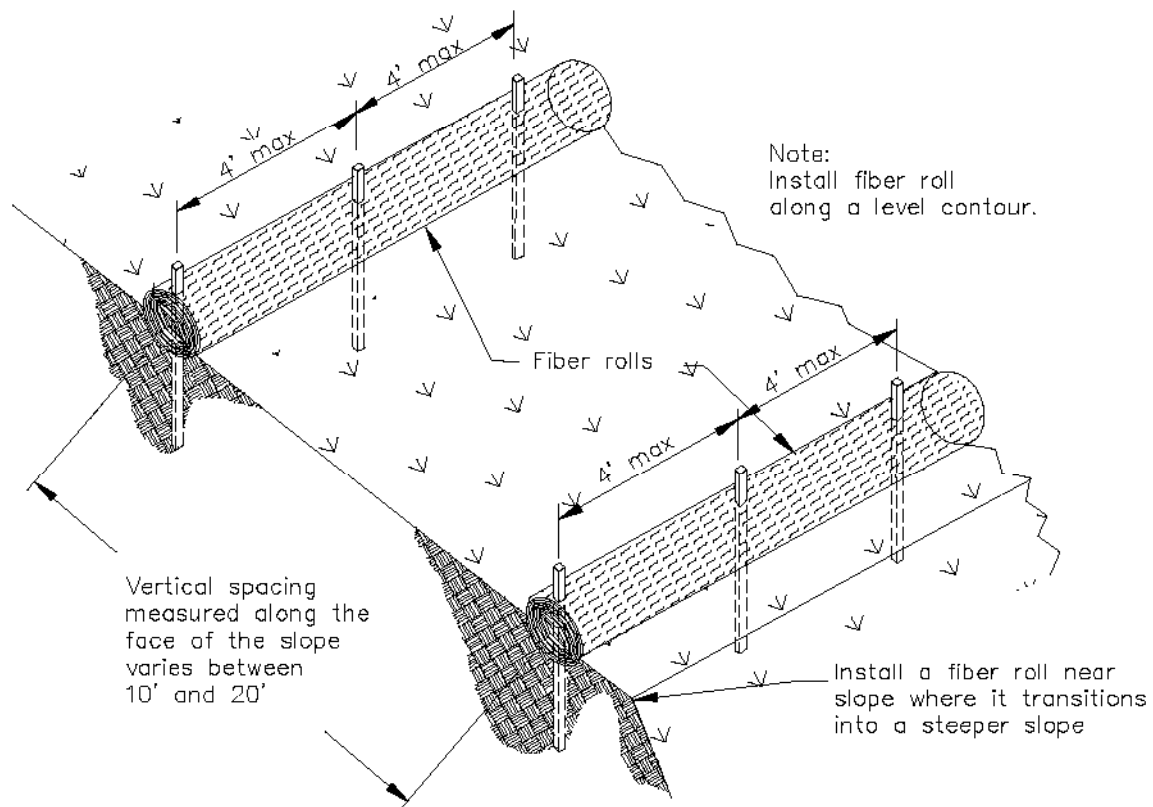
## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Repair or replace split, torn, unraveling, or slumping fiber rolls.
- If the fiber roll is used as a sediment capture device, or as an erosion control device to maintain sheet flows, sediment that accumulates in the BMP must be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when sediment accumulation reaches one-half the designated sediment storage depth, usually one-half the distance between the top of the fiber roll and the adjacent ground surface. Sediment removed during maintenance may be incorporated into earthwork on the site or disposed at an appropriate location.
- If fiber rolls are used for erosion control, such as in a mini check dam, sediment removal should not be required as long as the system continues to control the grade. Sediment control BMPs will likely be required in conjunction with this type of application.

## References

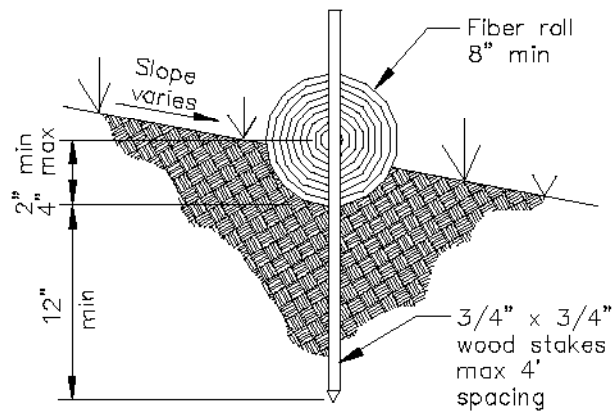
Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.





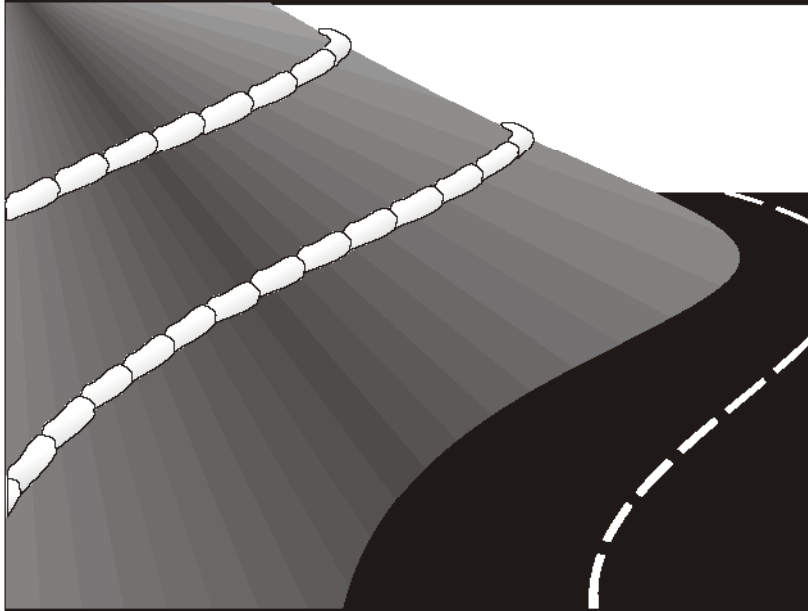
TYPICAL FIBER ROLL INSTALLATION

N.T.S.



ENTRENCHMENT DETAIL

N.T.S.



## Description and Purpose

A gravel bag berm is a series of gravel-filled bags placed on a level contour to intercept sheet flows. Gravel bags pond sheet flow runoff, allowing sediment to settle out, and release runoff slowly as sheet flows, preventing erosion.

## Suitable Applications

Gravel bag berms may be suitable:

- As a linear sediment control measure:
  - Below the toe of slopes and erodible slopes
  - As sediment traps at culvert/pipe outlets
  - Below other small cleared areas
  - Along the perimeter of a site
  - Down slope of exposed soil areas
  - Around temporary stockpiles and spoil areas
  - Parallel to a roadway to keep sediment off paved areas
  - Along streams and channels
- As linear erosion control measure:

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- SE-1 Silt Fence
- SE-5 Fiber Roll
- SE-8 Sandbag Barrier
- SE-9 Straw Bale Barrier



- Along the face and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow
- At the top of slopes to divert runoff away from disturbed slopes
- As check dams across mildly sloped construction roads

### **Limitations**

- Gravel berms may be difficult to remove.
- Removal problems limit their usefulness in landscaped areas.
- Gravel bag berm may not be appropriate for drainage areas greater than 5 acres.
- Runoff will pond upstream of the filter, possibly causing flooding if sufficient space does not exist.
- Degraded gravel bags may rupture when removed, spilling contents.
- Installation can be labor intensive.
- Berms may have limited durability for long-term projects.
- When used to detain concentrated flows, maintenance requirements increase.

### **Implementation**

#### ***General***

A gravel bag berm consists of a row of open graded gravel-filled bags placed on a level contour. When appropriately placed, a gravel bag berm intercepts and slows sheet flow runoff, causing temporary ponding. The temporary ponding provides quiescent conditions allowing sediment to settle. The open graded gravel in the bags is porous, which allows the ponded runoff to flow slowly through the bags, releasing the runoff as sheet flows. Gravel bag berms also interrupt the slope length and thereby reduce erosion by reducing the tendency of sheet flows to concentrate into rivulets, which erode rills, and ultimately gullies, into disturbed, sloped soils. Gravel bag berms are similar to sand bag barriers, but are more porous.

#### ***Design and Layout***

- Locate gravel bag berms on level contours.
  - Slopes between 20:1 and 2:1 (H:V): Gravel bags should be placed at a maximum interval of 50 ft (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the slope toe.
  - Slopes 2:1 (H:V) or steeper: Gravel bags should be placed at a maximum interval of 25 ft (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row placed the slope toe.
- Turn the ends of the gravel bag barriers up slope to prevent runoff from going around the berm.
- Allow sufficient space up slope from the gravel bag berm to allow ponding, and to provide room for sediment storage.

- For installation near the toe of the slope, consider moving the gravel bag barriers away from the slope toe to facilitate cleaning. To prevent flows behind the barrier, bags can be placed perpendicular to a berm to serve as cross barriers.
- Drainage area should not exceed 5 acres.
- In Non-Traffic Areas:
  - Height = 18 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more layer construction
  - Top width = 12 in. minimum for one or two layer construction
  - Side slopes = 2:1 or flatter
- In Construction Traffic Areas:
  - Height = 12 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more layer construction.
  - Top width = 12 in. minimum for one or two layer construction.
  - Side slopes = 2:1 or flatter.
- Butt ends of bags tightly
- On multiple row, or multiple layer construction, overlapp butt joints of adjacent row and row beneath.
- Use a pyramid approach when stacking bags.

## **Materials**

- **Bag Material:** Bags should be woven polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide fabric or burlap, minimum unit weight of 4 ounces/yd<sup>2</sup>, Mullen burst strength exceeding 300 lb/in<sup>2</sup> in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D3786, and ultraviolet stability exceeding 70% in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D4355.
- **Bag Size:** Each gravel-filled bag should have a length of 18 in., width of 12 in., thickness of 3 in., and mass of approximately 33 lbs. Bag dimensions are nominal, and may vary based on locally available materials.
- **Fill Material:** Fill material should be 0.5 to 1 in. Class 2 aggregate base, clean and free from clay, organic matter, and other deleterious material, or other suitable open graded, non-cohesive, porous gravel.

## **Costs**

Gravel filter: Expensive, since off-site materials, hand construction, and demolition/removal are usually required. Material costs for gravel bags are average of \$2.50 per empty gravel bag. Gravel costs range from \$20-\$35 per yd<sup>3</sup>.

**Inspection and Maintenance**

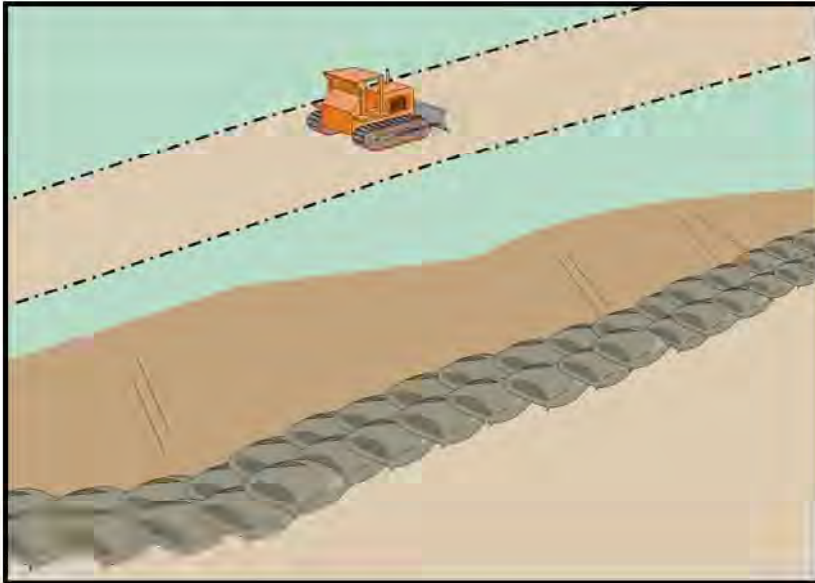
- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Gravel bags exposed to sunlight will need to be replaced every two to three months due to degrading of the bags.
- Reshape or replace gravel bags as needed.
- Repair washouts or other damage as needed.
- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP must be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height. Sediment removed during maintenance may be incorporated into earthwork on the site or disposed at an appropriate location.
- Remove gravel bag berms when no longer needed. Remove sediment accumulation and clean, re-grade, and stabilize the area. Removed sediment should be incorporated in the project or disposed of.

**References**

Handbook of Steel Drainage and Highway Construction, American Iron and Steel Institute, 1983.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Pollution Plan Handbook, First Edition, State of California, Department of Transportation Division of New Technology, Materials and Research, October 1992.



## Description and Purpose

A sandbag barrier is a series of sand-filled bags placed on a level contour to intercept sheet flows. Sandbag barriers pond sheet flow runoff, allowing sediment to settle out.

## Suitable Applications

Sandbag barriers may be suitable:

- As a linear sediment control measure:
  - Below the toe of slopes and erodible slopes
  - As sediment traps at culvert/pipe outlets
  - Below other small cleared areas
  - Along the perimeter of a site
  - Down slope of exposed soil areas
  - Around temporary stockpiles and spoil areas
  - Parallel to a roadway to keep sediment off paved areas
  - Along streams and channels
- As linear erosion control measure:
  - Along the face and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- SE-1 Silt Fence
- SE-5 Fiber Rolls
- SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm
- SE-9 Straw Bale Barrier



- At the top of slopes to divert runoff away from disturbed slopes
- As check dams across mildly sloped construction roads

### **Limitations**

- It is necessary to limit the drainage area upstream of the barrier to 5 acres.
- Degraded sandbags may rupture when removed, spilling sand.
- Installation can be labor intensive.
- Barriers may have limited durability for long-term projects.
- When used to detain concentrated flows, maintenance requirements increase.
- Burlap should not be used for sandbags.

### **Implementation**

#### ***General***

A sandbag barrier consists of a row of sand-filled bags placed on a level contour. When appropriately placed, a sandbag barrier intercepts and slows sheet flow runoff, causing temporary ponding. The temporary ponding provides quiescent conditions allowing sediment to settle. While the sand-filled bags are porous, the fine sand tends to quickly plug with sediment, limiting the rate of flow through the barrier. If a porous barrier is desired, consider SE-1, Silt Fence, SE-5, Fiber Rolls, SE-6, Gravel Bag Berms, or SE-9, Straw Bale Barriers. Sandbag barriers also interrupt the slope length and thereby reduce erosion by reducing the tendency of sheet flows to concentrate into rivulets which erode rills, and ultimately gullies, into disturbed, sloped soils. Sandbag barriers are similar to ground bag berms, but less porous.

#### ***Design and Layout***

- Locate sandbag barriers on a level contour.
  - Slopes between 20:1 and 2:1 (H:V): Sandbags should be placed at a maximum interval of 50 ft (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the slope toe.
  - Slopes 2:1 (H:V) or steeper: Sandbags should be placed at a maximum interval of 25 ft (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row placed near the slope toe.
- Turn the ends of the sandbag barrier up slope to prevent runoff from going around the barrier.
- Allow sufficient space up slope from the barrier to allow ponding, and to provide room for sediment storage.
- For installation near the toe of the slope, consider moving the barrier away from the slope toe to facilitate cleaning. To prevent flow behind the barrier, sandbags can be placed perpendicular to the barrier to serve as cross barriers.
- Drainage area should not exceed 5 acres.

- Stack sandbags at least three bags high.
- Butt ends of bags tightly.
- Overlapp butt joints of row beneath with each successive row.
- Use a pyramid approach when stacking bags.
- In non-traffic areas
  - Height = 18 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more layer construction
  - Side slope = 2:1 or flatter
- In construction traffic areas
  - Height = 12 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more layer construction.
  - Side slopes = 2:1 or flatter.

## **Materials**

- **Sandbag Material:** Sandbag should be woven polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide fabric, minimum unit weight of 4 ounces/yd<sup>2</sup>, Mullen burst strength exceeding 300 lb/in<sup>2</sup> in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D3786, and ultraviolet stability exceeding 70% in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D4355. Use of burlap may not acceptable in some jurisdictions.
- **Sandbag Size:** Each sand-filled bag should have a length of 18 in., width of 12 in., thickness of 3 in., and mass of approximately 33 lbs. Bag dimensions are nominal, and may vary based on locally available materials.
- **Fill Material:** All sandbag fill material should be non-cohesive, Class 1 or Class 2 permeable material free from clay and deleterious material.

## **Costs**

Sandbag barriers are more costly, but typically have a longer useful life than other barriers. Empty sandbags cost \$0.25 - \$0.75. Average cost of fill material is \$8 per yd<sup>3</sup>. Pre-filled sandbags are more expensive at \$1.50 - \$2.00 per bag.

## **Inspection and Maintenance**

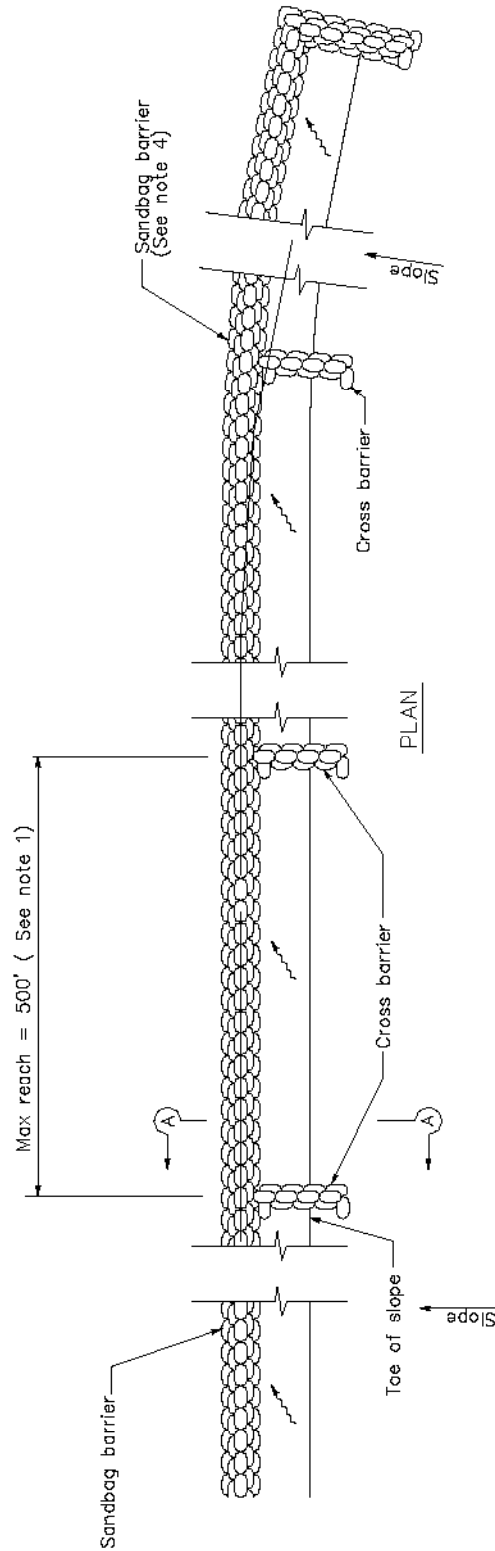
- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Sandbags exposed to sunlight will need to be replaced every two to three months due to degradation of the bags.
- Reshape or replace sandbags as needed.



- Repair washouts or other damage as needed.
- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP must be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height. Sediment removed during maintenance may be incorporated into earthwork on the site or disposed at an appropriate location.
- Remove sandbags when no longer needed. Remove sediment accumulation, and clean, re-grade, and stabilize the area.

**References**

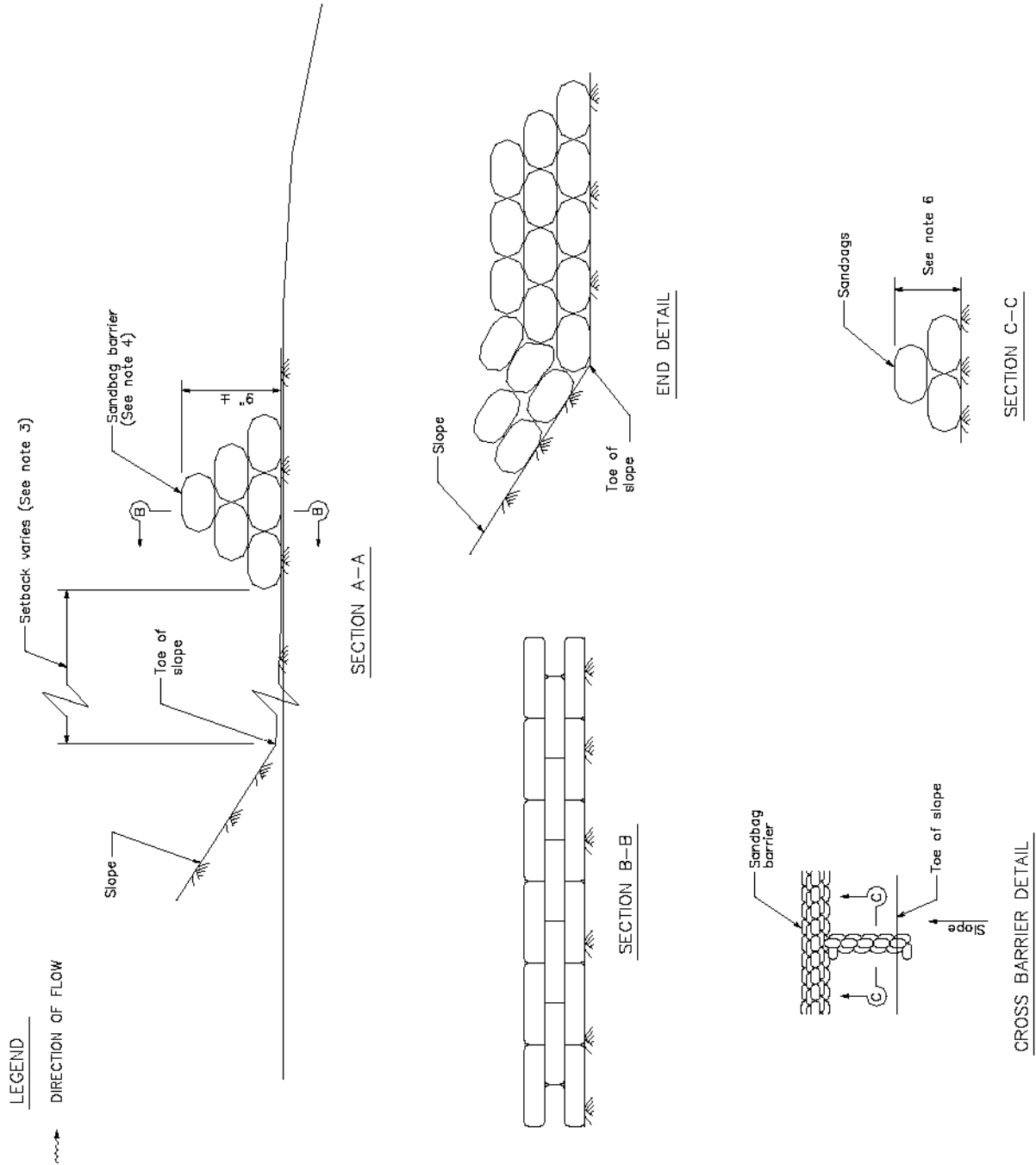
Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

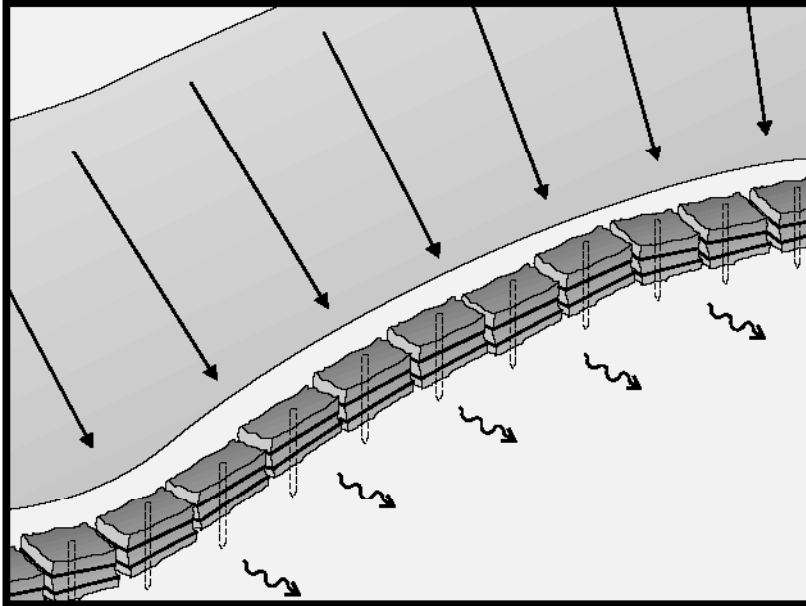


SANDBAG BARRIER

NOTES

1. Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed  $1/2$  the height of the linear barrier. In no case shall the reach length exceed 500'.
2. Place sandbags tightly.
3. Dimension may vary to fit field condition.
4. Sandbag barrier shall be a minimum of 3 bags high.
5. The end of the barrier shall be turned up slope.
6. Cross barriers shall be a min of  $1/2$  and a max of  $2/3$  the height of the linear barrier.
7. Sandbag rows and layers shall be staggered to eliminate gaps.





## Description and Purpose

A straw bale barrier is a series of straw bales placed on a level contour to intercept sheet flows. Straw bale barriers pond sheet-flow runoff, allowing sediment to settle out.

## Suitable Applications

Straw bale barriers may be suitable:

- As a linear sediment control measure:
  - Below the toe of slopes and erodible slopes
  - As sediment traps at culvert/pipe outlets
  - Below other small cleared areas
  - Along the perimeter of a site
  - Down slope of exposed soil areas
  - Around temporary stockpiles and spoil areas
  - Parallel to a roadway to keep sediment off paved areas
  - Along streams and channels
- As linear erosion control measure:
  - Along the face and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- SE-1 Silt Fence
- SE-5 Fiber Rolls
- SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm
- SE-8 Sandbag Barrier



- At the top of slopes to divert runoff away from disturbed slopes
- As check dams across mildly sloped construction roads

**Limitations**

Straw bale barriers:

- Are not to be used for extended periods of time because they tend to rot and fall apart
- Are suitable only for sheet flow on slopes of 10 % or flatter
- Are not appropriate for large drainage areas, limit to one acre or less
- May require constant maintenance due to rotting
- Are not recommended for concentrated flow, inlet protection, channel flow, and live streams
- Cannot be made of bale bindings of jute or cotton
- Require labor-intensive installation and maintenance
- Cannot be used on paved surfaces
- Should not to be used for drain inlet protection
- Should not be used on lined ditches
- May introduce undesirable non-native plants to the area

**Implementation*****General***

A straw bale barrier consists of a row of straw bales placed on a level contour. When appropriately placed, a straw bale barrier intercepts and slows sheet flow runoff, causing temporary ponding. The temporary ponding provides quiescent conditions allowing sediment to settle. Straw bale barriers also interrupt the slope length and thereby reduce erosion by reducing the tendency of sheet flows to concentrate into rivulets, which erode rills, and ultimately gullies, into disturbed, sloped soils.

Straw bale barriers have not been as effective as expected due to improper use. These barriers have been placed in streams and drainage ways where runoff volumes and velocities have caused the barriers to wash out. In addition, failure to stake and entrench the straw bale has allowed undercutting and end flow. Use of straw bale barriers in accordance with this BMP should produce acceptable results.

***Design and Layout***

- Locate straw bale barriers on a level contour.
  - Slopes up to 10:1 (H:V): Straw bales should be placed at a maximum interval of 50 ft (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the toe of slope.
  - Slopes greater than 10:1 (H:V): Not recommended.

- Turn the ends of the straw bale barrier up slope to prevent runoff from going around the barrier.
- Allow sufficient space up slope from the barrier to allow ponding, and to provide room for sediment storage.
- For installation near the toe of the slope, consider moving the barrier away from the slope toe to facilitate cleaning. To prevent flow behind the barrier, sand bags can be placed perpendicular to the barrier to serve as cross barriers.
- Drainage area should not exceed 1 acre, or 0.25 acre per 100 ft of barrier.
- Maximum flow path to the barrier should be limited to 100 ft.
- Straw bale barriers should consist of two parallel rows.
  - Butt ends of bales tightly
  - Stagger butt joints between front and back row
  - Each row of bales must be trenched in and firmly staked
- Straw bale barriers are limited in height to one bale laid on its side.
- Anchor bales with either two wood stakes or four bars driven through the bale and into the soil. Drive the first stake towards the butt joint with the adjacent bale to force the bales together.
- See attached figure for installation details.

## **Materials**

- **Straw Bale Size:** Each straw bale should be a minimum of 14 in. wide, 18 in. in height, 36 in. in length and should have a minimum mass of 50 lbs. The straw bale should be composed entirely of vegetative matter, except for the binding material.
- **Bale Bindings:** Bales should be bound by steel wire, nylon or polypropylene string placed horizontally. Jute and cotton binding should not be used. Baling wire should be a minimum diameter of 14 gauge. Nylon or polypropylene string should be approximately 12 gauge in diameter with a breaking strength of 80 lbs force.
- **Stakes:** Wood stakes should be commercial quality lumber of the size and shape shown on the plans. Each stake should be free from decay, splits or cracks longer than the thickness of the stake, or other defects that would weaken the stakes and cause the stakes to be structurally unsuitable. Steel bar reinforcement should be equal to a #4 designation or greater. End protection should be provided for any exposed bar reinforcement.

## **Costs**

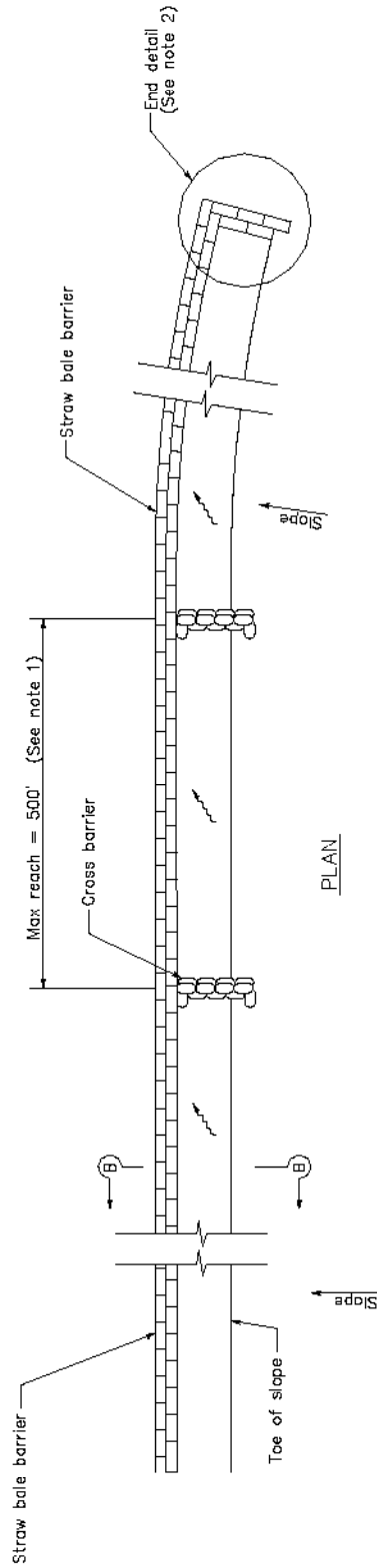
Straw bales cost \$5 - \$7 each. Adequate labor should be budgeted for installation and maintenance.

**Inspection and Maintenance*****Maintenance***

- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Straw bales degrade, especially when exposed to moisture. Rotting bales will need to be replaced on a regular basis.
- Replace or repair damaged bales as needed.
- Repair washouts or other damages as needed.
- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP must be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height. Sediment removed during maintenance may be incorporated into earthwork on the site or disposed at an appropriate location.
- Remove straw bales when no longer needed. Remove sediment accumulation, and clean, re-grade, and stabilize the area. Removed sediment should be incorporated in the project or disposed of.

**References**

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.



**NOTES**

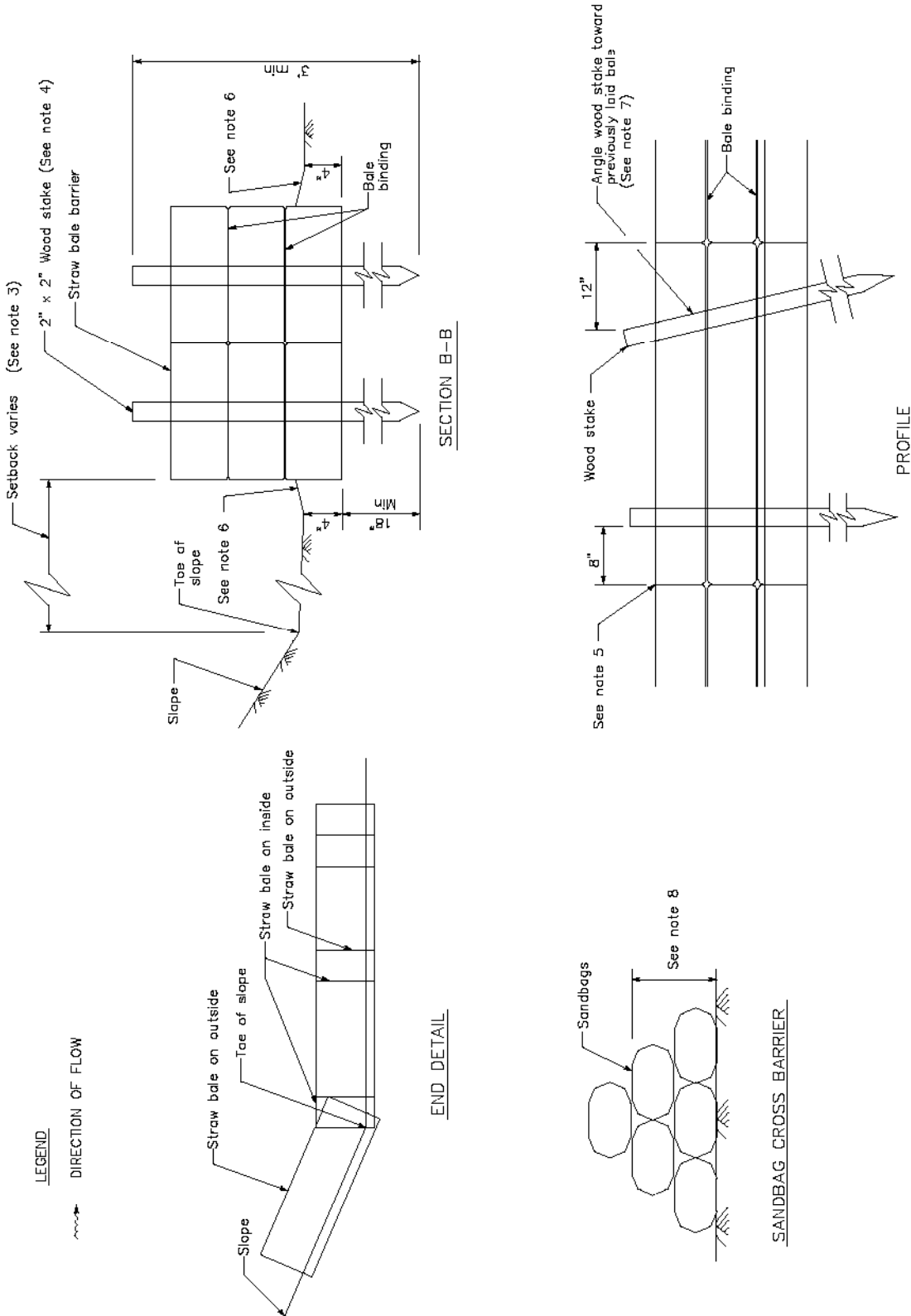
1. Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed  $1/2$  the height of the linear barrier. In no case shall the reach length exceed 500'.
2. The end of barrier shall be turned up slope.
3. Dimension may vary to fit field condition.
4. Stake dimensions are nominal.
5. Place straw bales tightly together.
6. Tamp embedment spalls against sides of installed bales.
7. Drive angled wood stake before vertical stake to ensure tight abutment to adjacent bale.
8. Sandbag cross barriers should be a min of  $1/2$  and a max of  $2/3$  the height of the linear barrier.
9. Sandbag rows and layers should be offset to eliminate gaps.

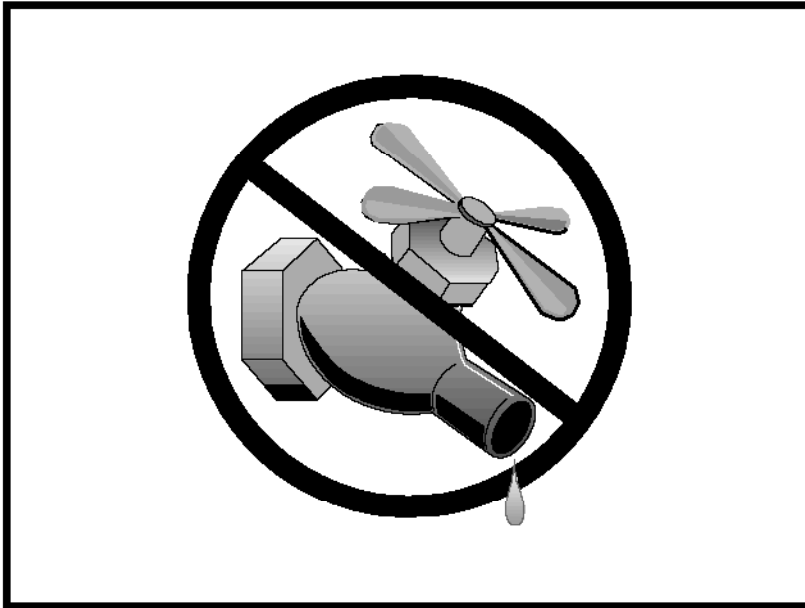
**LEGEND**

DIRECTION OF FLOW









## Description and Purpose

Water conservation practices are activities that use water during the construction of a project in a manner that avoids causing erosion and the transport of pollutants offsite. These practices can reduce or eliminate non-stormwater discharges.

## Suitable Applications

Water conservation practices are suitable for all construction sites where water is used, including piped water, metered water, trucked water, and water from a reservoir.

## Limitations

- None identified.

## Implementation

- Keep water equipment in good working condition.
- Stabilize water truck filling area.
- Repair water leaks promptly.
- Washing of vehicles and equipment on the construction site is discouraged.
- Avoid using water to clean construction areas. If water must be used for cleaning or surface preparation, surface should be swept and vacuumed first to remove dirt. This will minimize amount of water required.

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

None



- Direct construction water runoff to areas where it can soak into the ground or be collected and reused.
- Authorized non-stormwater discharges to the storm drain system, channels, or receiving waters are acceptable with the implementation of appropriate BMPs.
- Lock water tank valves to prevent unauthorized use.

## **Costs**

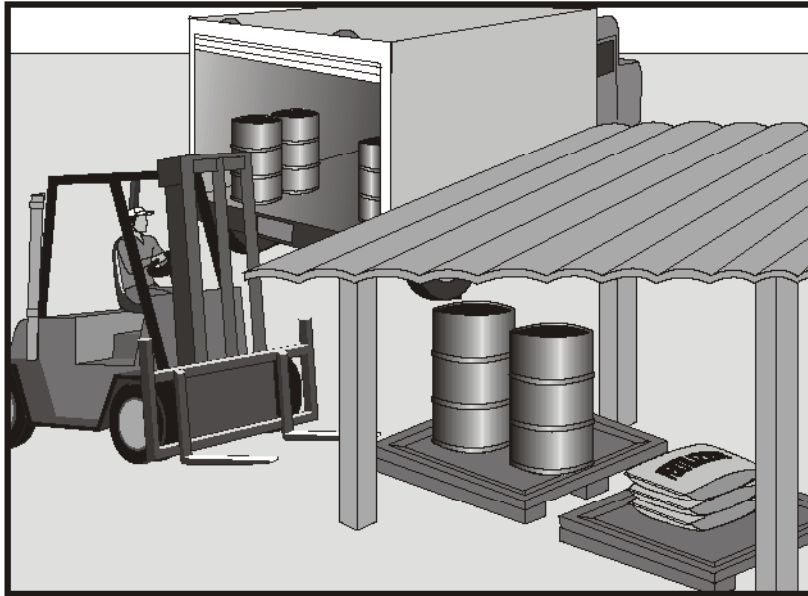
The cost is small to none compared to the benefits of conserving water.

## **Inspection and Maintenance**

- Inspect and verify that activity based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of authorized non-stormwater discharges.
- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharges daily while non-stormwater discharges are occurring.
- Repair water equipment as needed to prevent unintended discharges.
  - Water trucks
  - Water reservoirs (water buffalos)
  - Irrigation systems
  - Hydrant connections

## **References**

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.



## Description and Purpose

Prevent, reduce, or eliminate the discharge of pollutants from material delivery and storage to the stormwater system or watercourses by minimizing the storage of hazardous materials onsite, storing materials in a designated area, installing secondary containment, conducting regular inspections, and training employees and subcontractors.

This best management practice covers only material delivery and storage. For other information on materials, see WM-2, Material Use, or WM-4, Spill Prevention and Control. For information on wastes, see the waste management BMPs in this section.

## Suitable Applications

These procedures are suitable for use at all construction sites with delivery and storage of the following materials:

- Soil stabilizers and binders
- Pesticides and herbicides
- Fertilizers
- Detergents
- Plaster
- Petroleum products such as fuel, oil, and grease
- Asphalt and concrete components

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Trash	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Metals	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bacteria	<input type="checkbox"/>
Oil and Grease	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Organics	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## Potential Alternatives

None



- Hazardous chemicals such as acids, lime, glues, adhesives, paints, solvents, and curing compounds
- Concrete compounds
- Other materials that may be detrimental if released to the environment

**Limitations**

- Space limitation may preclude indoor storage.
- Storage sheds often must meet building and fire code requirements.

**Implementation**

The following steps should be taken to minimize risk:

- Temporary storage area should be located away from vehicular traffic.
- Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) should be supplied for all materials stored.
- Construction site areas should be designated for material delivery and storage.
- Material delivery and storage areas should be located near the construction entrances, away from waterways, if possible.
  - Avoid transport near drainage paths or waterways.
  - Surround with earth berms. See EC-9, Earth Dikes and Drainage Swales.
  - Place in an area which will be paved.
- Storage of reactive, ignitable, or flammable liquids must comply with the fire codes of your area. Contact the local Fire Marshal to review site materials, quantities, and proposed storage area to determine specific requirements. See the Flammable and Combustible Liquid Code, NFPA30.
- An up to date inventory of materials delivered and stored onsite should be kept.
- Hazardous materials storage onsite should be minimized.
- Hazardous materials should be handled as infrequently as possible.
- During the rainy season, consider storing materials in a covered area. Store materials in secondary containments such as earthen dike, horse trough, or even a children's wading pool for non-reactive materials such as detergents, oil, grease, and paints. Small amounts of material may be secondarily contained in "bus boy" trays or concrete mixing trays.
- Do not store chemicals, drums, or bagged materials directly on the ground. Place these items on a pallet and, when possible, in secondary containment.

- If drums must be kept uncovered, store them at a slight angle to reduce ponding of rainwater on the lids to reduce corrosion. Domed plastic covers are inexpensive and snap to the top of drums, preventing water from collecting.
- Chemicals should be kept in their original labeled containers.
- Employees and subcontractors should be trained on the proper material delivery and storage practices.
- Employees trained in emergency spill cleanup procedures must be present when dangerous materials or liquid chemicals are unloaded.
- If significant residual materials remain on the ground after construction is complete, properly remove materials and any contaminated soil. See WM-7, Contaminated Soil Management. If the area is to be paved, pave as soon as materials are removed to stabilize the soil.

### ***Material Storage Areas and Practices***

- Liquids, petroleum products, and substances listed in 40 CFR Parts 110, 117, or 302 should be stored in approved containers and drums and should not be overfilled. Containers and drums should be placed in temporary containment facilities for storage.
- A temporary containment facility should provide for a spill containment volume able to contain precipitation from a 25 year storm event, plus the greater of 10% of the aggregate volume of all containers or 100% of the capacity of the largest container within its boundary, whichever is greater.
- A temporary containment facility should be impervious to the materials stored therein for a minimum contact time of 72 hours.
- A temporary containment facility should be maintained free of accumulated rainwater and spills. In the event of spills or leaks, accumulated rainwater and spills should be collected and placed into drums. These liquids should be handled as a hazardous waste unless testing determines them to be non-hazardous. All collected liquids or non-hazardous liquids should be sent to an approved disposal site.
- Sufficient separation should be provided between stored containers to allow for spill cleanup and emergency response access.
- Incompatible materials, such as chlorine and ammonia, should not be stored in the same temporary containment facility.
- Throughout the rainy season, each temporary containment facility should be covered during non-working days, prior to, and during rain events.
- Materials should be stored in their original containers and the original product labels should be maintained in place in a legible condition. Damaged or otherwise illegible labels should be replaced immediately.

# **WM-1                      Material Delivery and Storage**

---

- Bagged and boxed materials should be stored on pallets and should not be allowed to accumulate on the ground. To provide protection from wind and rain throughout the rainy season, bagged and boxed materials should be covered during non-working days and prior to and during rain events.
- Stockpiles should be protected in accordance with WM-3, Stockpile Management.
- Materials should be stored indoors within existing structures or sheds when available.
- Proper storage instructions should be posted at all times in an open and conspicuous location.
- An ample supply of appropriate spill clean up material should be kept near storage areas.
- Also see WM-6, Hazardous Waste Management, for storing of hazardous materials.

## ***Material Delivery Practices***

- Keep an accurate, up-to-date inventory of material delivered and stored onsite.
- Arrange for employees trained in emergency spill cleanup procedures to be present when dangerous materials or liquid chemicals are unloaded.

## ***Spill Cleanup***

- Contain and clean up any spill immediately.
- Properly remove and dispose of any hazardous materials or contaminated soil if significant residual materials remain on the ground after construction is complete. See WM-7, Contaminated Soil Management.
- See WM-4, Spill Prevention and Control, for spills of chemicals and/or hazardous materials.

## **Cost**

- The largest cost of implementation may be in the construction of a materials storage area that is covered and provides secondary containment.

## **Inspection and Maintenance**

- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect weekly during the rainy season and of two-week intervals in the non-rainy season to verify continued BMP implementation.
- Keep an ample supply of spill cleanup materials near the storage area.
- Keep storage areas clean, well organized, and equipped with ample cleanup supplies as appropriate for the materials being stored.
- Repair or replace perimeter controls, containment structures, covers, and liners as needed to maintain proper function.

## References

Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

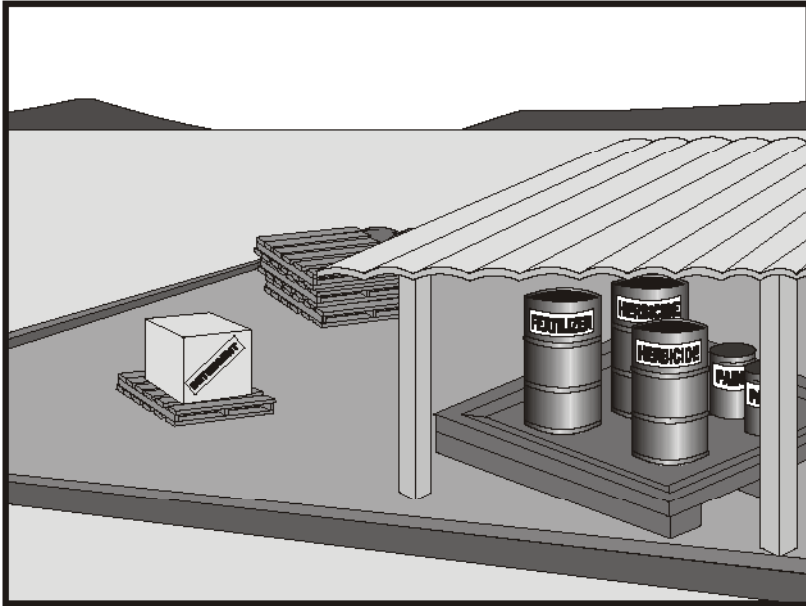
Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program: Program Development and Approval Guidance, Working Group Working Paper; USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities; Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practice, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.







## Description and Purpose

Prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to the storm drain system or watercourses from material use by using alternative products, minimizing hazardous material use onsite, and training employees and subcontractors.

## Suitable Applications

This BMP is suitable for use at all construction projects. These procedures apply when the following materials are used or prepared onsite:

- Pesticides and herbicides
- Fertilizers
- Detergents
- Plaster
- Petroleum products such as fuel, oil, and grease
- Asphalt and other concrete components
- Other hazardous chemicals such as acids, lime, glues, adhesives, paints, solvents, and curing compounds
- Concrete compounds
- Other materials that may be detrimental if released to the environment

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Trash	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Metals	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bacteria	<input type="checkbox"/>
Oil and Grease	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Organics	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## Potential Alternatives

None



## Limitations

Safer alternative building and construction products may not be available or suitable in every instance.

## Implementation

The following steps should be taken to minimize risk:

- Minimize use of hazardous materials onsite.
- Follow manufacturer instructions regarding uses, protective equipment, ventilation, flammability, and mixing of chemicals.
- Train personnel who use pesticides. The California Department of Pesticide Regulation and county agricultural commissioners license pesticide dealers, certify pesticide applicators, and conduct onsite inspections.
- Do not over-apply fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides. Prepare only the amount needed. Follow the recommended usage instructions. Over-application is expensive and environmentally harmful. Unless on steep slopes, till fertilizers into the soil rather than hydro seeding. Apply surface dressings in several smaller applications, as opposed to one large application, to allow time for infiltration and to avoid excess material being carried offsite by runoff. Do not apply these chemicals just before it rains.
- Train employees and subcontractors in proper material use.
- Supply Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all materials.
- Dispose of latex paint and paint cans, used brushes, rags, absorbent materials, and drop cloths, when thoroughly dry and are no longer hazardous, with other construction debris.
- Do not remove the original product label; it contains important safety and disposal information. Use the entire product before disposing of the container.
- Mix paint indoors or in a containment area. Never clean paintbrushes or rinse paint containers into a street, gutter, storm drain, or watercourse. Dispose of any paint thinners, residue, and sludge(s) that cannot be recycled, as hazardous waste.
- For water-based paint, clean brushes to the extent practicable, and rinse to a drain leading to a sanitary sewer where permitted, or into a concrete washout pit or temporary sediment trap. For oil-based paints, clean brushes to the extent practicable, and filter and reuse thinners and solvents.
- Use recycled and less hazardous products when practical. Recycle residual paints, solvents, non-treated lumber, and other materials.
- Use materials only where and when needed to complete the construction activity. Use safer alternative materials as much as possible. Reduce or eliminate use of hazardous materials onsite when practical.

- Require contractors to complete the “Report of Chemical Spray Forms” when spraying herbicides and pesticides.
- Keep an ample supply of spill clean up material near use areas. Train employees in spill clean up procedures.
- Avoid exposing applied materials to rainfall and runoff unless sufficient time has been allowed for them to dry.

## Costs

All of the above are low cost measures.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect weekly during the rainy season and at two-week intervals in the non-rainy season to verify continued BMP implementation.
- Maintenance of this best management practice is minimal.
- Spot check employees and subcontractors throughout the job to ensure appropriate practices are being employed.

## References

Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program: Program Development and Approval Guidance, Working Group Working Paper; USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities; Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practice, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.





## Description and Purpose

Stockpile Management procedures and practices are designed to reduce or eliminate air and stormwater pollution from stockpiles of soil, paving materials such as portland cement concrete (PCC) rubble, asphalt concrete (AC), asphalt concrete rubble, aggregate base, aggregate sub base or pre-mixed aggregate, asphalt binder (so called “cold mix” asphalt), and pressure treated wood.

## Suitable Applications

Implement in all projects that stockpile soil and other materials.

## Limitations

None identified.

## Implementation

Protection of stockpiles is a year-round requirement. To properly manage stockpiles:

- Locate stockpiles a minimum of 50 ft away from concentrated flows of stormwater, drainage courses, and inlets.
- Protect all stockpiles from stormwater runoff using a temporary perimeter sediment barrier such as berms, dikes, fiber rolls, silt fences, sandbag, gravel bags, or straw bale barriers.

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Trash	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Metals	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bacteria	<input type="checkbox"/>
Oil and Grease	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Organics	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## Potential Alternatives

None



- Implement wind erosion control practices as appropriate on all stockpiled material. For specific information, see WE-1, Wind Erosion Control.
- Manage stockpiles of contaminated soil in accordance with WM-7, Contaminated Soil Management.
- Place bagged materials on pallets and under cover.

### ***Protection of Non-Active Stockpiles***

Non-active stockpiles of the identified materials should be protected further as follows:

#### *Soil stockpiles*

- During the rainy season, soil stockpiles should be covered or protected with soil stabilization measures and a temporary perimeter sediment barrier at all times.
- During the non-rainy season, soil stockpiles should be covered or protected with a temporary perimeter sediment barrier prior to the onset of precipitation.

#### *Stockpiles of Portland cement concrete rubble, asphalt concrete, asphalt concrete rubble, aggregate base, or aggregate sub base*

- During the rainy season, the stockpiles should be covered or protected with a temporary perimeter sediment barrier at all times.
- During the non-rainy season, the stockpiles should be covered or protected with a temporary perimeter sediment barrier prior to the onset of precipitation.

#### *Stockpiles of "cold mix"*

- During the rainy season, cold mix stockpiles should be placed on and covered with plastic or comparable material at all times.
- During the non-rainy season, cold mix stockpiles should be placed on and covered with plastic or comparable material prior to the onset of precipitation.

#### *Stockpiles/Storage of pressure treated wood with copper, chromium, and arsenic or ammonical, copper, zinc, and arsenate*

- During the rainy season, treated wood should be covered with plastic or comparable material at all times.
- During the non-rainy season, treated wood should be covered with plastic or comparable material at all times and cold mix stockpiles should be placed on and covered with plastic or comparable material prior to the onset of precipitation.

### ***Protection of Active Stockpiles***

Active stockpiles of the identified materials should be protected further as follows:

- All stockpiles should be protected with a temporary linear sediment barrier prior to the onset of precipitation.
- Stockpiles of "cold mix" should be placed on and covered with plastic or comparable material prior to the onset of precipitation.

## Costs

All of the above are low cost measures.

## Inspection and Maintenance

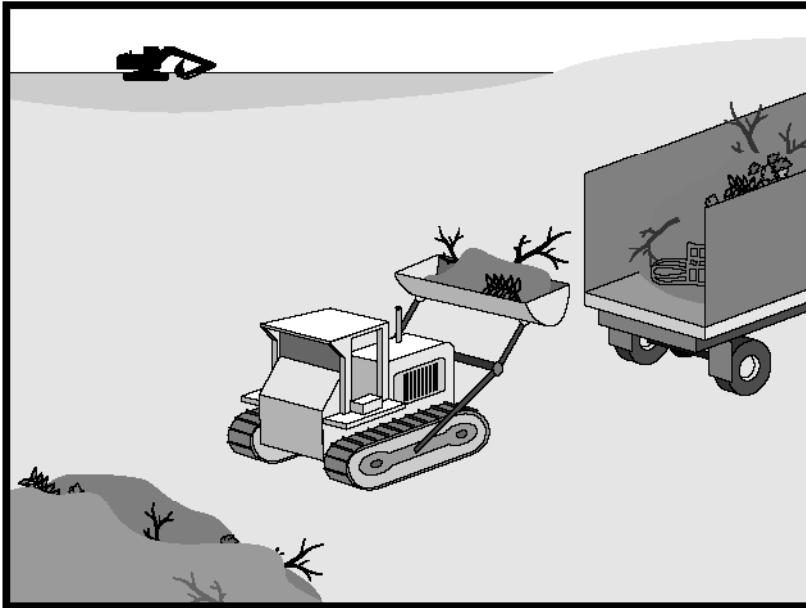
- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect weekly during the rainy season and of two-week intervals in the non-rainy season to verify continued BMP implementation
  
- Repair and/or replace perimeter controls and covers as needed to keep them functioning properly.

## References

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.







## Description and Purpose

Solid waste management procedures and practices are designed to prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to stormwater from solid or construction waste by providing designated waste collection areas and containers, arranging for regular disposal, and training employees and subcontractors.

## Suitable Applications

This BMP is suitable for construction sites where the following wastes are generated or stored:

- Solid waste generated from trees and shrubs removed during land clearing, demolition of existing structures (rubble), and building construction
- Packaging materials including wood, paper, and plastic
- Scrap or surplus building materials including scrap metals, rubber, plastic, glass pieces and masonry products
- Domestic wastes including food containers such as beverage cans, coffee cups, paper bags, plastic wrappers, and cigarettes
- Construction wastes including brick, mortar, timber, steel and metal scraps, pipe and electrical cuttings, non-hazardous equipment parts, styrofoam and other materials used to transport and package construction materials

## Objectives

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## Legend:

- Primary Objective
- Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Trash	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Metals	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bacteria	<input type="checkbox"/>
Oil and Grease	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Organics	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## Potential Alternatives

None



- Highway planting wastes, including vegetative material, plant containers, and packaging materials

**Limitations**

Temporary stockpiling of certain construction wastes may not necessitate stringent drainage related controls during the non-rainy season or in desert areas with low rainfall.

**Implementation**

The following steps will help keep a clean site and reduce stormwater pollution:

- Select designated waste collection areas onsite.
- Inform trash-hauling contractors that you will accept only watertight dumpsters for onsite use. Inspect dumpsters for leaks and repair any dumpster that is not watertight.
- Locate containers in a covered area or in a secondary containment.
- Provide an adequate number of containers with lids or covers that can be placed over the container to keep rain out or to prevent loss of wastes when it is windy.
- Plan for additional containers and more frequent pickup during the demolition phase of construction.
- Collect site trash daily, especially during rainy and windy conditions.
- Remove this solid waste promptly since erosion and sediment control devices tend to collect litter.
- Make sure that toxic liquid wastes (used oils, solvents, and paints) and chemicals (acids, pesticides, additives, curing compounds) are not disposed of in dumpsters designated for construction debris.
- Do not hose out dumpsters on the construction site. Leave dumpster cleaning to the trash hauling contractor.
- Arrange for regular waste collection before containers overflow.
- Clean up immediately if a container does spill.
- Make sure that construction waste is collected, removed, and disposed of only at authorized disposal areas.

**Education**

- Have the contractor's superintendent or representative oversee and enforce proper solid waste management procedures and practices.
- Instruct employees and subcontractors on identification of solid waste and hazardous waste.
- Educate employees and subcontractors on solid waste storage and disposal procedures.

- Hold regular meetings to discuss and reinforce disposal procedures (incorporate into regular safety meetings).
- Require that employees and subcontractors follow solid waste handling and storage procedures.
- Prohibit littering by employees, subcontractors, and visitors.
- Minimize production of solid waste materials wherever possible.

### ***Collection, Storage, and Disposal***

- Littering on the project site should be prohibited.
- To prevent clogging of the storm drainage system, litter and debris removal from drainage grates, trash racks, and ditch lines should be a priority.
- Trash receptacles should be provided in the contractor's yard, field trailer areas, and at locations where workers congregate for lunch and break periods.
- Litter from work areas within the construction limits of the project site should be collected and placed in watertight dumpsters at least weekly, regardless of whether the litter was generated by the contractor, the public, or others. Collected litter and debris should not be placed in or next to drain inlets, stormwater drainage systems, or watercourses.
- Dumpsters of sufficient size and number should be provided to contain the solid waste generated by the project.
- Full dumpsters should be removed from the project site and the contents should be disposed of by the trash hauling contractor.
- Construction debris and waste should be removed from the site biweekly or more frequently as needed.
- Construction material visible to the public should be stored or stacked in an orderly manner.
- Stormwater runoff should be prevented from contacting stored solid waste through the use of berms, dikes, or other temporary diversion structures or through the use of measures to elevate waste from site surfaces.
- Solid waste storage areas should be located at least 50 ft from drainage facilities and watercourses and should not be located in areas prone to flooding or ponding.
- Except during fair weather, construction and highway planting waste not stored in watertight dumpsters should be securely covered from wind and rain by covering the waste with tarps or plastic.
- Segregate potentially hazardous waste from non-hazardous construction site waste.
- Make sure that toxic liquid wastes (used oils, solvents, and paints) and chemicals (acids, pesticides, additives, curing compounds) are not disposed of in dumpsters designated for construction debris.

- For disposal of hazardous waste, see WM-6, Hazardous Waste Management. Have hazardous waste hauled to an appropriate disposal and/or recycling facility.
- Salvage or recycle useful vegetation debris, packaging and surplus building materials when practical. For example, trees and shrubs from land clearing can be used as a brush barrier, or converted into wood chips, then used as mulch on graded areas. Wood pallets, cardboard boxes, and construction scraps can also be recycled.

## Costs

All of the above are low cost measures.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect weekly during the rainy season and of two-week intervals in the non-rainy season to verify continued BMP implementation.
- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharge daily while non-stormwater discharges occur
- Inspect construction waste area regularly.
- Arrange for regular waste collection.

## References

Processes, Procedures and Methods to Control Pollution Resulting from All Construction Activity, 430/9-73-007, USEPA, 1973.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities; Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practice, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

## BG-40 Landscape Maintenance



Photo Credit: Geoff Brissauer

### Description

This category includes businesses that provide landscaping and landscape maintenance/gardening services.

### Pollutant Sources

The following are sources of pollutants:

- Selecting plants or landscape design,
- Installing new landscaping,
- Maintaining landscapes,
- Using pesticides and fertilizers, and
- Using gas-powered equipment.

Pollutants can include:

- Nutrients (fertilizers, yard wastes),
- Pesticides,
- Heavy metals (copper, lead, and zinc),
- Hydrocarbons (fuels, oils and grease), and
- Sediments.

### Approach

Minimize the potential for stormwater pollution and the need for resources/controls (water, pesticides, fertilizers) by creating and maintaining landscapes in a way that is compatible with the local soils, climate, and amount of rain and sun. Make stormwater pollution prevention BMPs a part of standard operating procedures and the employee training program.



## BG-40 Landscape Maintenance

Provide employee education materials in the first language of employees, as necessary.

### Source Control BMPs

The best management practices are listed by activity or area.

<b>Landscape Design</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Specify native, low maintenance, and insectary (attract beneficial insects) plants and landscape designs.</li> <li>□ Design zoned, water-efficient irrigation systems using technologies such as drip irrigation, soaker hoses, or microspray systems. Landscape design should be consistent with the local Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance. See the following website for a list of local ordinances: <a href="http://ftp.water.ca.gov/Model-Water-Efficient-Landscape-Ordinance/Local-Ordinances/">http://ftp.water.ca.gov/Model-Water-Efficient-Landscape-Ordinance/Local-Ordinances/</a></li> <li>□ Do not landscape riparian areas, except to remove non-native plants and replace them with native riparian landscaping.</li> <li>□ Replant with native species where possible when landscaping or building an ornamental pond. Do not assume something is native because you have seen it in your area. Contact the local nursery for information or visit the California Exotic Pest Plant Council website (<a href="http://www.caleppc.org">www.caleppc.org</a>).</li> </ul>
<b>Landscape Installation</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Protect stockpiles and landscaping materials from wind and rain by storing them under tarps or secured plastic sheeting.</li> <li>□ Schedule grading and excavation projects during dry weather.</li> <li>□ Divert runoff from exposed soils or lower its velocity by leveling and terracing.</li> <li>□ Use temporary check dams or ditches to divert runoff away from storm drains.</li> <li>□ Protect storm drains with sandbags or other sediment controls.</li> <li>□ Revegetation is an excellent form of erosion control for any site. Keep soils covered with vegetation or temporary cover material (mulch) to control erosion.</li> <li>□ Check plant roots before buying a plant. Do not buy plants with roots that are kinked or circling around the container. Do not buy plants with soft, rotten, or deformed root crowns.</li> <li>□ Do not pile soil around the plant any higher than the root crown.</li> </ul>
<b>Landscape Maintenance</b>	<p><b>Yard Waste</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Allow leaf drop to become part of the mulch layer in trees, shrub, and groundcover areas.</li> <li>□ Keep lawn mower blades sharp, and grasscyle.</li> </ul>

## BG-40 Landscape Maintenance

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Grasscyle – leave grass clippings on the lawn when mowing. Once cut, grass clippings first dehydrate, and then decompose, quickly disappearing from view. Proper mowing is required for successful grasscycling. Cut grass when the surface is dry, and keep mower blades sharp. Follow the "1/3 Rule": mow the lawn often enough so that no more than 1/3 of the length of the grass blade is cut in any one mowing. Frequent mowing will produce short clippings that will not cover up the grass surface. The lawn may have to be cut every seven days when the lawn is growing fast but only every 7 to 14 days when the lawn is growing slowly.</li> <li>□ Do not leave clippings on pavement or sidewalks where they can wash off into the street, gutter, or storm drain.</li> <li>□ Collect lawn and garden clippings, pruning waste, and tree trimmings. Chip if necessary, and compost or take to the local municipal yard waste recycling/composting facility.</li> <li>□ In communities with curbside pick-up of yard waste, place clippings and pruning waste at the curb in approved bags or containers. No curbside pickup of yard waste is available for commercial properties.</li> <li>□ Do not blow or rake leaves or other yard waste into the street, or place yard waste in gutters or on dirt shoulders, unless it is being piled up for recycling (allowed by some municipalities). After pick-up, sweep up any leaves, litter, or residue in gutters or on street.</li> </ul> <p><b>Fertilizing and Pruning</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Perform soil analysis seasonally to determine actual fertilization need and application rates.</li> <li>□ Fertilize garden areas with a mulch of leaves, bark, or composted manure and/or garden waste.</li> <li>□ Apply chemical fertilizer only as needed, when plants can best use it, and when the potential for it being carried away by runoff is low. Make sure the fertilizer spreader is calibrated.</li> <li>□ Prune plants sparingly, if at all. A healthy plant – one that is native to the area and growing under the right conditions – should not need pruning, except when it is not in the right location (where safety or liability is a concern).</li> </ul> <p><b>Watering</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Use soil probes to determine soil moisture depth, overall moisture levels, and the need to adjust irrigation schedules.</li> <li>□ Check sprinklers regularly. Adjust as needed to minimize or eliminate overspray onto impervious surfaces. Replace broken sprinklers or lines.</li> </ul>
--

## BG-40 Landscape Maintenance

<p><b>Pest and Weed Control</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Obtain appropriate licenses for pest control and pesticides. Contact the Department of Pesticide Regulation for more information.</li> <li>□ Become trained in and offer customers less-toxic pest control or Integrated Pest Management (IPM).</li> <li>□ The label on a pesticide container is a legal document. Use a pesticide only as instructed on the label.</li> <li>□ Store pesticides, fertilizers, and other chemicals indoors or in a shed or storage cabinet.</li> <li>□ Use pesticides sparingly, according to instructions on the label. Rinse empty containers, and use rinsewater as product.</li> <li>□ Dispose of rinsed, empty containers in the trash. Dispose of unused pesticides as hazardous waste.</li> <li>□ To control weeds, use drip irrigation and mulch. Hand-pull weeds including roots or cut down to ground. Repeat cutting before they flower, grow new leaves, or go to seed. Use herbicides containing pelargonic acid or herbicidal soap as a last resort.</li> </ul> <p><b>Handling Gasoline</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Use only containers approved by a nationally recognized testing lab, such as Underwriters Laboratories (UL). Keep the container tightly sealed. Containers should be fitted with a spout to allow pouring without spilling and to minimize the generation of vapors.</li> <li>□ Fill cautiously. Always use a funnel and/or spout to prevent spilling or splashing when fueling power mowers, blowers, and all other gas-powered equipment.</li> <li>□ Avoid spilling gasoline on the ground, especially near wells. If a spill occurs use kitty litter, saw dust, or an absorbent towel to soak up the spill, then dispose of it properly.</li> <li>□ Store carefully. Gasoline moves quickly through soil and into groundwater, therefore, store and use gasoline and fuel equipment as far away from your drinking water well as possible. Be certain to keep a closed cap on the gasoline container. Store at ground level, not on a shelf to minimize the danger of falling and spilling.</li> <li>□ Do not dispose of gasoline down the drain, into surface water, onto the ground, or in the trash. Contact the local municipality for directions on proper disposal of excess or old gasoline. Transport old gas in an approved gasoline container.</li> </ul> <p><b>Working Near Waterbodies</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Do not dump lawn clippings, other yard waste, or soil along creek banks or in creeks.</li> </ul>
--

## BG-40 Landscape Maintenance

- Do not store stockpiles of materials (soil, mulch) along creek banks. These piles can erode over time into a creek.
- Do not spray pesticides or fertilizers by creeks.
- Do not over water near streams. The excess water may carry pesticides, fertilizers, sediments, and anything else in its path directly into the creek.

### Treatment Control BMPs

Not applicable.

### More Information

Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association, 1999. Start at the Source – Design Guidance Manual for Stormwater Quality Protection. Available on-line at: <http://www.scvtrppp-wrk.com/pdfs/0910/StartAtTheSource.pdf>.

Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association, Undated. *Landscape designs for Stormwater Management - Stormwater Control for Small Projects*. Available at: [http://www.acterra.org/programs/stewardship/\\_doc/landscape\\_disperson.pdf](http://www.acterra.org/programs/stewardship/_doc/landscape_disperson.pdf).

Bay Area Water Pollution Prevention Agencies, 2004. *Less-Toxic Pest Management- Problem Pesticides*. Available on-line at: <http://www.sccgov.org/sites/bwm/hhw/Documents/505018Problem%20Pesticides.pdf>.

California Invasive Plant Council, Undated Website. *Prevention BMPs for Land Managers*. Available on-line at: <http://www.cal-ipc.org/ip/prevention/landmanagers.php>.

California Department of Resources Recycling and Recovery (CalRecycle), 1999. *Grasscycle! Make the Most of Your Lawn, Make the Most of Your Time*. Available on-line at: <http://www.calrecycle.ca.gov/publications/Documents/Organics/44399011.pdf>.

California Department of Resources Recycling and Recovery (CalRecycle). *Capitol Park Training Manual Description and Guidelines for Horticultural Practices*. Available on-line at: <http://www.calrecycle.ca.gov/organics/landscaping/Demos/Manual.pdf>.

Southern Sonoma County Resource Conservation District, Undated pamphlet. *A Guide for Rural Landowners and Residents of Petaluma and Sonoma Creek Watersheds*. Available on-line at: <http://www.conservation.ca.gov/dlrp/watershedportal/Documents/SSCRCD%20Creek%20Care%20Guide%20for%20southern%20sonoma%20red1.pdf>.

USEPA, Office of Water National Pollution Discharge Elimination System, Undated website. *Stormwater Menu of BMPs Municipal Landscaping*. Available on-line at: <http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menubmp/index.cfm?action=browse&Rbutton=detail&bmp=1>.

### References

Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association, 1999. Start at the Source – Design Guidance Manual for Stormwater Quality Protection. Available on-line at: <http://www.scvtrppp-wrk.com/pdfs/0910/StartAtTheSource.pdf>.

## BG-40 Landscape Maintenance

Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association, Undated. *Landscape designs for Stormwater Management - Stormwater Control for Small Projects*. Available at: [http://www.acterra.org/programs/stewardship/\\_doc/landscape\\_disperson.pdf](http://www.acterra.org/programs/stewardship/_doc/landscape_disperson.pdf).

City of San Diego, 2012. *Storm Water Standards*. Available on-line at: <http://www.sandiego.gov/development-services/news/pdf/stormwatermanual.pdf>.

City of San Francisco, 2009. *San Francisco Stormwater Design Guidelines*. Available on-line at: <http://www.sfwater.org/modules/showdocument.aspx?documentid=2779>.

County of Los Angeles Department of Public Works, 2009. *Stormwater Best Management Practice Design and Maintenance Manual For Publicly Maintained Storm Drain Systems*. Available on-line at: <http://dpm.lacounty.gov/idd/publications/Stormwater%20BMP%20Design%20and%20Maintenance%20Manual.pdf>.

## Non-Stormwater Discharges SC-10

### Description

Non-stormwater discharges (NSWDs) are flows that do not consist entirely of stormwater. Some non-stormwater discharges do not include pollutants and may be discharged to the storm drain if local regulations allow. These include uncontaminated groundwater and natural springs. There are also some non-stormwater discharges that typically do not contain pollutants and may be discharged to the storm drain with conditions. These include: potable water sources, fire hydrant flushing, air conditioner condensate, landscape irrigation drainage and landscape watering, emergency firefighting, etc. as discussed in Section 2.

However there are certain non-stormwater discharges that pose an environmental concern. These discharges may originate from illegal dumping of industrial material or wastes and illegal connections such as internal floor drains, appliances, industrial processes, sinks, and toilets that are illegally connected to the nearby storm drainage system through on-site drainage and piping. These unauthorized discharges (examples of which may include: process waste waters, cooling waters, wash waters, and sanitary wastewater) can carry substances such as paint, oil, fuel and other automotive fluids, chemicals and other pollutants into storm drains.

Non-stormwater discharges will need to be addressed through a combination of detection and elimination. The ultimate goal is to effectively eliminate unauthorized non-stormwater discharges to the stormwater drainage system through implementation of measures to detect, correct, and enforce against illicit connections and illegal discharges of

### Objectives

- **COVER**
- **Contain**
- **Educate**
- **Reduce/Minimize**
- **Product Substitution**

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment	
Nutrients	✓
Trash	
Metals	✓
Bacteria	✓
Oil and Grease	✓
Organics	✓

### Minimum BMPs Covered

 Good Housekeeping	✓
 Preventative Maintenance	
 Spill and Leak Prevention and Response	✓
 Material Handling & Waste Management	
 Erosion and Sediment Controls	
 Employee Training Program	✓
 Quality Assurance Record Keeping	✓



## Non-Stormwater Discharges SC-10

pollutants on streets and into the storm drain system and downstream water bodies.

### Approach

Initially the Discharger must make an assessment of non-stormwater discharges to determine which types must be eliminated or addressed through BMPs. The focus of the following approach is the elimination of unauthorized non-stormwater discharges. See other BMP Fact Sheets for activity-specific pollution prevention procedures.

### General Pollution Prevention Protocols

- Implement waste management controls described in SC-34 Waste Handling and Disposal.
- Develop clear protocols and lines of communication for effectively prohibiting non-stormwater discharges, especially those that are not classified as hazardous. These are often not responded to as effectively as they need to be.
- Stencil or demarcate storm drains, where applicable, to prevent illegal disposal of pollutants. Storm drain inlets should have messages such as "Dump No Waste Drains to Stream" or similar stenciled or demarcated next to them to warn against ignorant or unintentional dumping of pollutants into the storm drainage system.
- Manage and control sources of water such as hose bibs, faucets, wash racks, irrigation heads, etc. Identify hoses and faucets in the SWPPP, and post signage for appropriate use.

### Non-Stormwater Discharge Investigation Protocols

Identifying the sources of non-stormwater discharges requires the Discharger to conduct an investigation of the facility at regular intervals. There are several categories of non-stormwater discharges:

- Visible, easily identifiable discharges, typically generated as surface runoff, such as uncontained surface runoff from vehicle or equipment washing; and
- Non-visible, (e.g., subsurface) discharges into the site drainage system through a variety of pathways that are not obvious.

The approach to detecting and eliminating non-stormwater discharges will vary considerably, as discussed below:

### Visible and identifiable discharges

- Conduct routine inspections of the facilities and of each major activity area and identify visible evidence of unauthorized non-stormwater discharges. This may include:
  - Visual observations of actual discharges occurring;

## Non-Stormwater Discharges SC-10

- ✓ Evidence of surface staining, discoloring etc. that indicates that discharges have occurred;
- ✓ Pools of water in low lying areas when a rain event has not occurred; and
- ✓ Discussions with operations personnel to understand practices that may lead to unauthorized discharges.
- If evidence of non-stormwater discharges is discovered:
  - ✓ Document the location and circumstances using Worksheets 5 and 6 (Section 2 of the manual), including digital photos;
  - ✓ Identify and implement any quick remedy or corrective action (e.g., moving uncovered containers inside or to a proper location); and
  - ✓ Develop a plan to eliminate the discharge. Consult the appropriate activity-specific BMP Fact Sheet for alternative approaches to manage and eliminate the discharge.
- Consult the appropriate activity-specific BMP Fact Sheet for alternative approaches to manage and eliminate the discharge. Make sure the facility SWPPP is up-to-date and includes applicable BMPs to address the non-stormwater discharge.

### Other Illegal Discharges (Non visible)

#### Illicit Connections

- Locate discharges from the industrial storm drainage system to the municipal storm drain system through review of "as-built" piping schematics.
- Isolate problem areas and plug illicit discharge points.
- Locate and evaluate discharges to the storm drain system.
- Visual Inspection and Inventory:
  - ✓ Inventory and inspect each discharge point during dry weather.
  - ✓ Keep in mind that drainage from a storm event can continue for a day or two following the end of a storm and groundwater may infiltrate the underground stormwater collection system.
  - ✓ Non-stormwater discharges are often intermittent and may require periodic inspections.

#### Review Infield Piping

- A review of the "as-built" piping schematic is a way to determine if there are any connections to the stormwater collection system.

## Non-Stormwater Discharges SC-10

- Inspect the path of loading/unloading area drain inlets and floor drains in older buildings.
- Never assume storm drains are connected to the sanitary sewer system.

### Monitoring for Investigation/detection of illegal discharges

- If a suspected illegal or unknown discharge is detected, monitoring of the discharge may help identify the content and/or suggest the source. This may be done with a field screening analysis, flow meter measurements, or by collecting a sample for laboratory analysis. Section 5 and Appendix D describe the necessary field equipment and procedures for field investigations.
- Investigative monitoring may be conducted over time. For example if, a discharge is intermittent, then monitoring might be conducted to determine the timing of the discharge to determine the source.
- Investigative monitoring may be conducted over a spatial area. For example, if a discharge is observed in a pipe, then monitoring might be conducted at accessible upstream locations in order to pinpoint the source of the discharge.
- Generally, investigative monitoring requiring collection of samples and submittal for lab analysis requires proper planning and specially trained staff.

### Smoke Testing

Smoke testing of wastewater and stormwater collection systems is used to detect connections between the two piping systems. Smoke testing is generally performed at a downstream location and the smoke is forced upstream using blowers to create positive pressure. The advantage to smoke testing is that it can potentially identify multiple potential discharge sources at once.

- Smoke testing uses a harmless, non-toxic smoke cartridges developed specifically for this purpose.
- Smoke testing requires specialized equipment (e.g., cartridges, blowers) and is generally only appropriate for specially trained staff.
- A Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) for smoke testing is highly desirable. The SOP should address the following elements:
  - ✓ Proper planning and notification of nearby residents and emergency services is necessary since introducing smoke into the system may result in false alarms;
  - ✓ During dry weather, the stormwater collection system is filled with smoke and then traced back to sources;

## Non-Stormwater Discharges SC-10

- ✓ Temporary isolation of segments of pipe using sand bags is often needed to force the smoke into leaking pipes; and
- ✓ The appearance of smoke in a waste vent pipe, at a sewer manhole, or even the base of a toilet indicates that there may be a connection between the sanitary and storm water systems.
- Most municipal wastewater agencies will have necessary staff and equipment to conduct smoke testing and they should be contacted if cross connections with the sanitary sewer are suspected. See SC-44 Drainage System Maintenance for more information.

### Dye Testing

- Dye testing is typically performed when there is a suspected specific pollutant source and location (i.e., leaking sanitary sewer) and there is evidence of dry weather flows in the stormwater collection system.
- Dye is released at a probable upstream source location, either the facility's sanitary or process wastewater system. The dye must be released with a sufficient volume of water to flush the system.
- Operators then visually examine the downstream discharge points from the stormwater collection system for the presence of the dye.
- Dye testing can be performed informally using commercially available products in order to conduct an initial investigation for fairly obvious cross-connections.
- More detailed dye testing should be performed by properly trained staff and follow SOPs. Specialized equipment such as fluorometers may be necessary to detect low concentrations of dye.
- Most municipal wastewater agencies will have necessary staff and equipment to conduct dye testing and they should be contacted if cross connections with the sanitary sewer are suspected.

### TV Inspection of Drainage System

- Closed Circuit Television (CCTV) can be employed to visually identify illicit connections to the industrial storm drainage system. Two types of CCTV systems are available: (1) a small specially designed camera that can be manually pushed on a stiff cable through storm drains to observe the interior of the piping, or (2) a larger remote operated video camera on treads or wheels that can be guided through storm drains to view the interior of the pipe.
- CCTV systems often include a high-pressure water jet and camera on a flexible cable. The water jet cleans debris and biofilm off the inside of pipes so the camera can take video images of the pipe condition.

## Non-Stormwater Discharges SC-10

- CCTV units can detect large cracks and other defects such as offsets in pipe ends caused by root intrusions or shifting substrate.
- CCTV can also be used to detect dye introduced into the sanitary sewer.
- CCTV inspections require specialized equipment and properly trained staff and are generally best left to specialized contractors or municipal public works staff.

### Illegal Dumping

- Substances illegally dumped on streets and into the storm drain systems and creeks may include paints, used oil and other automotive fluids, construction debris, chemicals, fresh concrete, leaves, grass clippings, and pet wastes. These wastes can cause stormwater and receiving water quality problems as well as clog the storm drain system itself.
- Establish a system for tracking incidents. The system should be designed to identify the following:
  - ✓ Illegal dumping hot spots;
  - ✓ Types and quantities (in some cases) of wastes;
  - ✓ Patterns in time of occurrence (time of day/night, month, or year);
  - ✓ Mode of dumping (abandoned containers, "midnight dumping" from moving vehicles, direct dumping of materials, accidents/spills);
  - ✓ An anonymous tip/reporting mechanism; and
  - ✓ Evidence of responsible parties (e.g., tagging, encampments, etc.).
- One of the keys to success of reducing or eliminating illegal dumping is increasing the number of people at the facility who are aware of the problem and who have the tools to at least identify the incident, if not correct it. Therefore, train field staff to recognize and report the incidents.

Once a site has been cleaned:

- Post "No Dumping" signs with a phone number for reporting dumping and disposal.
- Landscaping and beautification efforts of hot spots may also discourage future dumping, as well as provide open space and increase property values.
- Lighting or barriers may also be needed to discourage future dumping.
- See fact sheet SC-11 Spill Prevention, Control, and Cleanup.



## Non-Stormwater Discharges SC-10

### Inspection

- Regularly inspect and clean up hot spots and other storm drainage areas where illegal dumping and disposal occurs.
- Conduct field investigations of the industrial storm drain system for potential sources of non-stormwater discharges.
- Pro-actively conduct investigations of high priority areas. Based on historical data, prioritize specific geographic areas and/or incident type for pro-active investigations.

### Spill and Leak Prevention and Response

- On paved surfaces, clean up spills with as little water as possible. Use a rag for small spills, a damp mop for general cleanup, and absorbent material for larger spills. If the spilled material is hazardous, then the used cleanup materials are also hazardous and must be sent to a certified laundry (rags) or disposed of as hazardous waste.
- Never hose down or bury dry material spills. Sweep up the material and dispose of properly.
- Use adsorbent materials on small spills rather than hosing down the spill. Remove the adsorbent materials promptly and dispose of properly.
- For larger spills, a private spill cleanup company or Hazmat team may be necessary.
- See SC-11 Spill Prevention Control and Cleanup.

### Employee Training Program

- Training of technical staff in identifying and documenting illegal dumping incidents is required. The frequency of training must be presented in the SWPPP, and depends on site-specific industrial materials and activities.
- Consider posting a quick reference table near storm drains to reinforce training.
- Train employees to identify non-stormwater discharges and report discharges to the appropriate departments.
- Educate employees about spill prevention and cleanup.
- Well-trained employees can reduce human errors that lead to accidental releases or spills. The employer should have the tools and knowledge to immediately begin cleaning up a spill should one occur. Employees should be familiar with the Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasure Plan. Employees should be able to identify work/jobs with high potential for spills and suggest methods to reduce possibility.
- Determine and implement appropriate outreach efforts to reduce non-permissible non-stormwater discharges.

## Non-Stormwater Discharges SC-10

- Conduct spill response drills annually (if no events occurred) in order to evaluate the effectiveness of the plan.
- When a responsible party is identified, educate the party on the impacts of his or her actions.



### Quality Assurance and Record Keeping

#### Performance Evaluation

- Annually review internal investigation results; assess whether goals were met and what changes or improvements are necessary.
- Obtain feedback from personnel assigned to respond to, or inspect for, illicit connections and illegal dumping incidents.
- Develop document and data management procedures.
- A database is useful for defining and tracking the magnitude and location of the problem.
- Report prohibited non-stormwater discharges observed during the course of normal daily activities so they can be investigated, contained, and cleaned up or eliminated.
- Document that non-stormwater discharges have been eliminated by recording tests performed, methods used, dates of testing, and any on-site drainage points observed.
- Annually document and report the results of the program.
- Maintain documentation of illicit connection and illegal dumping incidents, including significant conditionally exempt discharges that are not properly managed.
- Document training activities.

### Potential Limitations and Work-Arounds

Some facilities may have space constraints, limited staffing and time limitations that may preclude implementation of BMPs. Provided below are typical limitations and recommended "work-arounds."

- Many facilities do not have accurate, up-to-date 'as-built' plans or drawings which may be necessary in order to conduct non-stormwater discharge assessments.
  - ✓ Online tools such as Google Earth™ can provide an aerial view of the facility and may be useful in understanding drainage patterns and potential sources of non-stormwater discharges
  - ✓ Local municipal jurisdictions may have useful drainage systems maps.

## Non-Stormwater Discharges SC-10

- Video surveillance cameras are commonly used to secure the perimeter of industrial facilities against break-ins and theft. These surveillance systems may also be useful for capturing illegal dumping activities. Minor, temporary adjustments to the field of view of existing surveillance camera systems to target known or suspected problem areas may be a cost-effective way of capturing illegal dumping activities and identifying the perpetrators.

### Potential Capital Facility Costs and Operation & Maintenance Requirements

#### Facilities

- Capital facility cost requirements may be minimal unless cross-connections to storm drains are detected.
- Indoor floor drains may require re-plumbing if cross-connections are detected.
- Leaky sanitary sewers will require repair or replacement which can have significant costs depending on the size and industrial activity at the facility.

#### Maintenance (including administrative and staffing)

- The primary effort is for staff time and depends on how aggressively a program is implemented.
- Costs for containment, and disposal of any leak or discharge is borne by the Discharger.
- Illicit connections can be difficult to locate especially if there is groundwater infiltration.
- Illegal dumping and illicit connection violations requires technical staff to detect and investigate them.

### Supplemental Information

#### Permit Requirements

The IGP authorizes certain Non-Storm Water Discharges (NSWDs) provided BMPs are included in the SWPPP and implemented to:

- Reduce or prevent the contact of authorized NSWDs with materials or equipment that are potential sources of pollutants;
- Reduce, to the extent practicable, the flow or volume of authorized NSWDs;
- Ensure that authorized NSWDs do not contain quantities of pollutants that cause or contribute to an exceedance of a water quality standards (WQS); and,

## Non-Stormwater Discharges SC-10

- Reduce or prevent discharges of pollutants in authorized NSWDs in a manner that reflects best industry practice considering technological availability and economic practicability and achievability."

### References and Resources

Center for Watershed Protection, 2004. *Illicit Discharge Detection and Elimination: A Guidance Manual for Program Development and Technical Assessments*, EPA Cooperative Agreement X-82907801-0.

Dublin San Ramon Sanitation District. <http://www.darsd.com/www/smoketest.html>.

Orange County Stormwater Program, Best Management Practices for Industrial/Commercial Business Activities. Available online at: <http://ocwatersheds.com/documents/bmp/industrial/commercial/businessactivities>.

Sacramento Stormwater Management Program, *Best Management Practices for Industrial Storm Water Pollution Control*, Available online at: <http://www.msa.sacounty.net/sactostormwater/documents/guides/industrial-BMP-manual.pdf>.

Santa Clara Valley Urban Runoff Pollution Prevention Program. <http://www.scvurppp.org>.

Southern California Coastal Water Research Project, 2013. *The California Microbial Source Identification Manual: A Tiered Approach to Identifying Fecal Pollution Sources to Beaches*, Technical Report 804.

The Storm Water Managers Resource Center, <http://www.stormwatercenter.net/>.

US EPA. National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System. Available online at: [http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/information/bmps/index.cfm?action=factsheet\\_results&view=specific&bmp=111](http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/information/bmps/index.cfm?action=factsheet_results&view=specific&bmp=111).

WEF Press Alexandria, Virginia, 2009. *Existing Sewer Evaluation and Rehabilitation: WEF Manual of Practice No. FD-6 ASCE/EWRI Manuals and Reports on Engineering Practice No. 62, Third Edition*.

## Spill Prevention, Control & Cleanup SC-11

### Description

Many activities that occur at an industrial or commercial site have the potential to cause accidental spills. Preparation for accidental spills, with proper training and reporting systems implemented, can minimize the discharge of pollutants to the environment.

Spills and leaks are one of the largest contributors of stormwater pollutants. Spill prevention and control plans are applicable to any site at which hazardous materials are stored or used. An effective plan should have spill prevention and response procedures that identify hazardous material storage areas, specify material handling procedures, describe spill response procedures, and provide locations of spill clean-up equipment and materials. The plan should take steps to identify and characterize potential spills, eliminate and reduce spill potential, respond to spills when they occur in an effort to prevent pollutants from entering the stormwater drainage system, and train personnel to prevent and control future spills. An adequate supply of spill clean-up materials must be maintained onsite.

### Approach

#### General Pollution Prevention Protocols

- Develop procedures to prevent/mitigate spills to storm drain systems.
- Develop and standardize reporting procedures, containment, storage, and disposal activities, documentation, and follow-up procedures.
- Establish procedures and/or controls to minimize spills and leaks. The procedures should address:
  - ✓ Description of the facility, owner and address, activities, chemicals, and quantities present;

### Objectives

- Cover
- Contain
- Educate
- Reduce/Minimize
- Product Substitution

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment	
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	✓
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	✓
Organics	✓

### Minimum BMPs Covered

Good Housekeeping	
Preventative Maintenance	
Spill and Leak Prevention and Response	✓
Material Handling & Waste Management	
Erosion and Sediment Controls	
Employee Training Program	✓
Quality Assurance Record Keeping	✓



## Spill Prevention, Control & Cleanup SC-11

- ✓ Facility map of the locations of industrial materials;
  - ✓ Notification and evacuation procedures;
  - ✓ Cleanup instructions;
  - ✓ Identification of responsible departments; and
  - ✓ Identify key spill response personnel.
- Recycle, reclaim, or reuse materials whenever possible. This will reduce the amount of process materials that are brought into the facility.



### Spill and Leak Prevention and Response

#### Spill Prevention

- Develop procedures to prevent/mitigate spills to storm drain systems. Develop and standardize reporting procedures, containment, storage, and disposal activities, documentation, and follow-up procedures.
- If illegal dumping is observed at the facility:
  - ✓ Post "No Dumping" signs with a phone number for reporting illegal dumping and disposal. Signs should also indicate fines and penalties applicable for illegal dumping.
  - ✓ Landscaping and beautification efforts may also discourage illegal dumping.
  - ✓ Bright lighting and/or entrance barriers may also be needed to discourage illegal dumping.
- Store and contain liquid materials in such a manner that if the container is ruptured, the contents will not discharge, flow, or be washed into the storm drainage system, surface waters, or groundwater.
- If the liquid is oil, gas, or other material that separates from and floats on water, install a spill control device (such as a tee section) in the catch basins that collect runoff from the storage tank area.



#### Preventative Maintenance

- Place drip pans or absorbent materials beneath all mounted taps, and at all potential drip and spill locations during filling and unloading of tanks. Any collected liquids or soiled absorbent materials must be reused/recycled or properly disposed.
- Store and maintain appropriate spill cleanup materials in a location known to all near the tank storage area; and ensure that employees are familiar with the site's spill control plan and/or proper spill cleanup procedures.

## Spill Prevention, Control & Cleanup SC-11

- Sweep and clean the storage area monthly if it is paved, *do not hose down the area to a storm drain.*
- Check tanks (and any containment sumps) daily for leaks and spills. Replace tanks that are leaking, corroded, or otherwise deteriorating with tanks in good condition. Collect all spilled liquids and properly dispose of them.
- Label all containers according to their contents (e.g., solvent, gasoline).
- Label hazardous substances regarding the potential hazard (corrosive, radioactive, flammable, explosive, poisonous).
- Prominently display required labels on transported hazardous and toxic materials (per US DOT regulations).
- Identify key spill response personnel.

### Spill Response

- Clean up leaks and spills immediately.
- Place a stockpile of spill cleanup materials where it will be readily accessible (e.g., near storage and maintenance areas).
- On paved surfaces, clean up spills with as little water as possible.
  - ✓ Use a rag for small spills, a damp mop for general cleanup, and absorbent material for larger spills.
  - ✓ If the spilled material is hazardous, then the used cleanup materials are also hazardous and must be sent to a certified laundry (rags) or disposed of as hazardous waste.
  - ✓ If possible use physical methods for the cleanup of dry chemicals (e.g., brooms, shovels, sweepers, or vacuums).
- Never hose down or bury dry material spills. Sweep up the material and dispose of properly.
- Chemical cleanups of material can be achieved with the use of adsorbents, gels, and foams. Use adsorbent materials on small spills rather than hosing down the spill. Remove the adsorbent materials promptly and dispose of properly.
- For larger spills, a private spill cleanup company or Hazmat team may be necessary.

## Spill Prevention, Control & Cleanup SC-11

### Reporting

- Report spills that pose an immediate threat to human health or the environment to the Regional Water Quality Control Board or local authority as location regulations dictate.
- Federal regulations require that any oil spill into a water body or onto an adjoining shoreline be reported to the National Response Center (NRC) at 800-424-8802 (24 hour).
- Report spills to 911 for dispatch and clean-up assistance when needed. Do not contact fire agencies directly.
- Establish a system for tracking incidents. The system should be designed to identify the following:
  - ✓ Types and quantities (in some cases) of wastes;
  - ✓ Patterns in time of occurrence (time of day/night, month, or year);
  - ✓ Mode of dumping (abandoned containers, "midnight dumping" from moving vehicles, direct dumping of materials, accidents/spills);
  - ✓ Clean-up procedures; and
  - ✓ Responsible parties.



### Employee Training Program

- Educate employees about spill prevention and cleanup.
- Well-trained employees can reduce human errors that lead to accidental releases or spills:
  - ✓ The employee should have the tools and knowledge to immediately begin cleaning up a spill should one occur; and
  - ✓ Employees should be familiar with the Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasure Plan.
- Employees should be educated about aboveground storage tank requirements. Employees responsible for aboveground storage tanks and liquid transfers should be thoroughly familiar with the Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasure Plan and the plan should be readily available.
- Train employees to recognize and report illegal dumping incidents.

## Spill Prevention, Control & Cleanup SC-11

### Other Considerations (Limitations and Regulations)

- State regulations exist for facilities with a storage capacity of 10,000 gallons or more of petroleum to prepare a Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasure (SPCC) Plan (Health & Safety Code Chapter 6.67).
- State regulations also exist for storage of hazardous materials (Health & Safety Code Chapter 6.95), including the preparation of area and business plans for emergency response to the releases or threatened releases.
- Consider requiring smaller secondary containment areas (less than 200 sq. ft.) to be connected to the sanitary sewer, prohibiting any hard connections to the storm drain.

### Requirements

#### Costs (including capital and operation & maintenance)

- Will vary depending on the size of the facility and the necessary controls.
- Prevention of leaks and spills is inexpensive. Treatment and/or disposal of contaminated soil or water can be quite expensive.

#### Maintenance (including administrative and staffing)

- Develop spill prevention and control plan, provide and document training, conduct inspections of material storage areas, and supply spill kits.
- Extra time is needed to properly handle and dispose of spills, which results in increased labor costs.

### Supplemental Information

#### Further Detail of the BMP

##### Reporting

Record keeping and internal reporting represent good operating practices because they can increase the efficiency of the facility and the effectiveness of BMPs. A good record keeping system helps the facility minimize incident recurrence, correctly respond with appropriate cleanup activities, and comply with legal requirements. A record keeping and reporting system should be set up for documenting spills, leaks, and other discharges, including discharges of hazardous substances in reportable quantities. Incident records describe the quality and quantity of non-stormwater discharges to the storm sewer. These records should contain the following information:

- Date and time of the incident;
- Weather conditions;
- Duration of the spill/leak/discharge;

## Spill Prevention, Control & Cleanup SC-11

- Cause of the spill/leak/discharge;
- Response procedures implemented;
- Persons notified; and
- Environmental problems associated with the spill/leak/discharge.

Separate record keeping systems should be established to document housekeeping and preventive maintenance inspections, and training activities. All housekeeping and preventive maintenance inspections should be documented. Inspection documentation should contain the following information:

- Date and time the inspection was performed;
- Name of the inspector;
- Items inspected;
- Problems noted;
- Corrective action required; and
- Date corrective action was taken.

Other means to document and record inspection results are field notes, timed and dated photographs, videotapes, and drawings and maps.

#### Aboveground Tank Leak and Spill Control

Accidental releases of materials from aboveground liquid storage tanks present the potential for contaminating stormwater with many different pollutants. Materials spilled, leaked, or lost from tanks may accumulate in soils or on impervious surfaces and be carried away by stormwater runoff.

The most common causes of unintentional releases are:

- Installation problems;
- Failure of piping systems (pipes, pumps, flanges, couplings, hoses, and valves);
- External corrosion and structural failure;
- Spills and overfills due to operator error; and
- Leaks during pumping of liquids or gases from truck or rail car to a storage tank or vice versa.

## Spill Prevention, Control & Cleanup SC-11

Storage of reactive, ignitable, or flammable liquids should comply with the Uniform Fire Code and the National Electric Code. Practices listed below should be employed to enhance the code requirements:

- Tanks should be placed in a designated area.
- Tanks located in areas where firearms are discharged should be encapsulated in concrete or the equivalent.
- Designated areas should be impervious and paved with Portland cement concrete, free of cracks and gaps, in order to contain leaks and spills.
- Liquid materials should be stored in UL approved double walled tanks or surrounded by a curb or dike to provide the volume to contain 10 percent of the volume of all of the containers or 110 percent of the volume of the largest container, whichever is greater. The area inside the curb should slope to a drain.
- For used oil or dangerous waste, a dead-end sump should be installed in the drain.
- All other liquids should be drained to the sanitary sewer if available. The drain must have a positive control such as a lock, valve, or plug to prevent release of contaminated liquids.
- Accumulated stormwater in petroleum storage areas should be passed through an oil/water separator.

Maintenance is critical to preventing leaks and spills. Conduct routine inspections and:

- Check for external corrosion and structural failure.
- Check for spills and overfills due to operator error.
- Check for failure of piping system (pipes, pumps, flanges, coupling, hoses, and valves).
- Check for leaks or spills during pumping of liquids or gases from truck or rail car to a storage facility or vice versa.
- Visually inspect new tank or container installation for loose fittings, poor welding, and improper or poorly fitted gaskets.
- Inspect tank foundations, connections, coatings, and tank walls and piping system. Look for corrosion, leaks, cracks, scratches, and other physical damage that may weaken the tank or container system.
- Frequently relocate accumulated stormwater during the wet season.

## Spill Prevention, Control & Cleanup SC-11

- Periodically conduct integrity testing by a qualified professional.

#### Vehicle Leak and Spill Control

Major spills on roadways and other public areas are generally handled by highly trained Hazmat teams from local fire departments or environmental health departments. The measures listed below pertain to leaks and smaller spills at vehicle maintenance shops.

In addition to implementing the spill prevention, control, and clean up practices above, use the following measures related to specific activities:

#### Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance

- Perform all vehicle fluid removal or changing inside or under cover to prevent the run-on of stormwater and the runoff of spills.
- Regularly inspect vehicles and equipment for leaks, and repair immediately.
- Check incoming vehicles and equipment (including delivery trucks, and employee and subcontractor vehicles) for leaking oil and fluids. Do not allow leaking vehicles or equipment onsite.
- Always use secondary containment, such as a drain pan or drop cloth, to catch spills or leaks when removing or changing fluids.
- Immediately drain all fluids from wrecked vehicles.
- Store wrecked vehicles or damaged equipment under cover.
- Place drip pans or absorbent materials under heavy equipment when not in use.
- Use absorbent materials on small spills rather than hosing down the spill.
- Remove the adsorbent materials promptly and dispose of properly.
- Promptly transfer used fluids to the proper waste or recycling drums. Don't leave full drip pans or other open containers lying around.
- Oil filters disposed of in trashcans or dumpsters can leak oil and contaminate stormwater. Place the oil filter in a funnel over a waste oil recycling drum to drain excess oil before disposal. Oil filters can also be recycled. Ask your oil supplier or recycler about recycling oil filters.
- Store cracked batteries in a non-leaking secondary container. Do this with all cracked batteries, even if you think all the acid has drained out. If you drop a battery, treat it as if it is cracked. Put it into the containment area until you are sure it is not leaking.

## Spill Prevention, Control & Cleanup SC-11

### Vehicle and Equipment Fueling

- Design the fueling area to prevent the run-on of stormwater and the runoff of spills:
  - Cover fueling area if possible.
  - Use a perimeter drain or slope pavement inward with drainage to a sump.
  - Pave fueling area with concrete rather than asphalt.
- If dead-end sump is not used to collect spills, install an oil/water separator.
- Install vapor recovery nozzles to help control drips as well as air pollution.
- Discourage "topping-off" of fuel tanks.
- Use secondary containment when transferring fuel from the tank truck to the fuel tank.
- Use absorbent materials on small spills and general cleaning rather than hosing down the area. Remove the absorbent materials promptly.
- Carry out all Federal and State requirements regarding underground storage tanks, or install above ground tanks.
- Do not use mobile fueling of mobile industrial equipment around the facility; rather, transport the equipment to designated fueling areas.
- Keep your Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasure (SPCC) Plan up-to-date.
- Train employees in proper fueling and cleanup procedures.

### Industrial Spill Prevention Response

For the purposes of developing a spill prevention and response program to meet the stormwater regulations, facility managers should use information provided in this fact sheet and the spill prevention/response portions of the fact sheets in this handbook, for specific activities.

The program should:

- Integrate with existing emergency response/hazardous materials programs (e.g., Fire Department).
- Develop procedures to prevent/mitigate spills to storm drain systems.
- Identify responsible departments.

## Spill Prevention, Control & Cleanup SC-11

- Develop and standardize reporting procedures, containment, storage, and disposal activities, documentation, and follow-up procedures.
- Address spills at municipal facilities, as well as public areas.
- Provide training concerning spill prevention, response and cleanup to all appropriate personnel.

### References and Resources

California's Nonpoint Source Program Plan. <http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/nps/index.html>.

Clark County Storm Water Pollution Control Manual. Available online at: <http://www.co.clark.wa.us/pubworks/bmpman.pdf>.

King County Storm Water Pollution Control Manual. Available online at: <http://dnr.metrokc.gov/wlr/dss/spcm.htm>.

Orange County Stormwater Program, Best Management Practices for Industrial/Commercial Business Activities. Available online at: <http://ocwatersheds.com/documents/bmp/industrialcommercialbusinessactivities>.

Santa Clara Valley Urban Runoff Pollution Prevention Program. <http://www.scvrppp.org>.

The Stormwater Managers Resource Center. <http://www.stormwatercenter.net/>.

## Vehicle and Equipment Fueling SC-20

### Description

Spills and leaks that occur during vehicle and equipment fueling can contribute hydrocarbons, oil and grease, as well as heavy metals, to stormwater runoff. Implementing the following management practices can help prevent fuel spills and leaks.

### Approach

- Reduce potential for pollutant discharge through source control pollution prevention and BMP implementation. Successful implementation depends on effective training of employees on applicable BMPs and general pollution prevention strategies and objectives.

### General Pollution Prevention Protocols

- Use properly maintained off-site fueling stations whenever possible. These businesses are better equipped to handle fuel and spills properly.
- Focus pollution prevention activities on containment of spills and leaks, most of which may occur during liquid transfers.

### Good Housekeeping

- "Spot clean" leaks and drips routinely. Leaks are not cleaned up until the absorbent is picked up and disposed of properly.
- Manage materials and waste properly (see Material Handling and Waste Management) to reduce adverse impacts on stormwater quality.
- Paint signs on storm drain inlets to indicate that they are not to receive liquid or solid wastes.
- Post signs at sinks to remind employees not to pour wastes down drains.

### Objectives

- Cover
- Contain
- Educate
- Reduce/Minimize
- Product Substitution

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment	
Nutrients	
Trash	✓
Metals	✓
Bacteria	✓
Oil and Grease	✓
Organics	✓

### Minimum BMPs Covered

Good Housekeeping	✓
Preventative Maintenance	✓
Spill and Leak Prevention and Response	✓
Material Handling & Waste Management	✓
Erosion and Sediment Controls	✓
Employee Training Program	✓
Quality Assurance Record Keeping	✓



## Vehicle and Equipment Fueling SC-20

- Clean yard storm drain inlet(s) regularly and especially after large storms.
- Do not pour materials down storm drains.
- Build a shed or temporary roof over fueling area to limit exposure to rain.
- Post signs to remind employees and customers not to top off the fuel tank when filling and signs that ban customers and employees from changing engine oil or other fluids at that location.
- Report leaking vehicles to fleet maintenance.
- Ensure the following safeguards are in place:
  - ✓ Overflow protection devices on tank systems to warn the operator or automatically shut down transfer pumps when the tank reaches full capacity.
  - ✓ Protective guards around tanks and piping to prevent vehicle or forklift damage.
  - ✓ Clear tagging or labeling of all valves to reduce human error.
  - ✓ Emergency shut-off and emergency phone number.

### Preventative Maintenance

#### Fuel Dispensing Areas

- Inspect vehicles and equipment for leaks regularly and repair immediately.
- Sweep the fueling area weekly, if it is paved, to collect loose particles, and wipe up spills with rags and other absorbent material immediately. Do not hose down the area to a storm drain.
- Fit underground storage tanks with spill containment and overflow prevention systems meeting the requirements of Section 2635(b) of Title 23 of the California Code of Regulations.
- Fit fuel dispensing nozzles with "hold-open latches" (automatic shutoffs) except where prohibited by local fire departments.
- Post signs at the fuel dispenser or fuel island warning vehicle owners/operators against "topping off" of vehicle fuel tanks.
- Design fueling area to prevent stormwater runoff and spills. Use a perimeter drain or slope pavement inward with drainage to sump; regularly remove materials accumulated in sump.
- Pave area with concrete rather than asphalt.

## Vehicle and Equipment Fueling SC-20

- ❑ Cover fueling area with an overhanging roof structure or canopy so that precipitation cannot come in contact with the fueling area. Where covering is not feasible and the fuel island is surrounded by pavement, apply a suitable sealant that protects the asphalt from spilled fuels.
- ❑ Install vapor recovery nozzles to help control drips as well as air pollution.
- ❑ Use secondary containment when transferring fuel from the tank truck to the fuel tank. Cover storm drains in the vicinity during transfer.

### Air/Water Supply Area

- ❑ Minimize the possibility of stormwater pollution from air/water supply areas by doing at least one of the following:
  - ✓ Spot clean leaks and drips routinely to prevent runoff of spillage.
  - ✓ Grade and pave the air/water supply area to prevent run-on of stormwater.
  - ✓ Install a roof over the air/water supply area.
  - ✓ Install a low containment berm around the air/water supply area.

### Inspection

- ❑ Aboveground Tank Leak and Spill Control:
  - ✓ Check for external corrosion and structural failure.
  - ✓ Check for spills and overfills due to operator error.
  - ✓ Check for failure of piping system.
  - ✓ Check for leaks or spills during pumping of liquids or gases from truck or rail car to a storage facility or vice versa.
  - ✓ Visually inspect new tank or container installation for loose fittings, poor welding, and improper or poorly fitted gaskets.
  - ✓ Inspect tank foundations, connections, coatings, and tank walls and piping system. Look for corrosion, leaks, cracks, scratches, and other physical damage that may weaken the tank or container system.
  - ✓ Conduct integrity testing periodically by a qualified professional.
- ❑ Inspect and clean, if necessary, storm drain inlets and catch basins within the facility boundary before October 1 each year.

## Vehicle and Equipment Fueling SC-20



### Spill Response and Prevention Procedures

- ❑ Keep your spill prevention and control plan up-to-date.
- ❑ Maintain an adequate stockpile of spill cleanup materials at locations where it will be readily accessible.
- ❑ Clean leaks, drips, and other spills with as little water as possible.
  - ✓ Use rags for small spills.
  - ✓ Use a damp mop for general cleanup.
  - ✓ Use dry absorbent material for larger spills.
- ❑ Use the following three-step method for cleaning floors:
  - ✓ Clean spills with rags or other absorbent materials
  - ✓ Sweep floor using dry absorbent material
  - ✓ Mop the floor. Mop water may be discharged to the sanitary sewer via a toilet or sink.
- ❑ Remove the adsorbent materials promptly and dispose of properly when using absorbent materials on small spills.
- ❑ Store portable absorbent booms (long flexible shafts or barriers made of absorbent material) in unbermed fueling areas.
- ❑ Report spills promptly.
- ❑ If a dead-end sump is not used to collect spills, install an oil/water separator.



### Material Handling and Waste Management

- ❑ Do not pour liquid wastes into floor drains, sinks, outdoor storm drain inlets, or other storm drains or sewer connections.
- ❑ Do not put used or leftover cleaning solutions, solvents, and automotive fluids in the sanitary sewer.
- ❑ Collect leaking or dripping fluids in drip pans or containers. Fluids are easier to recycle if kept separate.
- ❑ Promptly transfer used fluids to the proper waste or recycling drums. Do not leave drip pans or other open containers lying around.

## Vehicle and Equipment Fueling SC-20

- ❑ Minimize the possibility of stormwater pollution from outside waste receptacles by doing at least one of the following:
  - ✓ Use only watertight waste receptacle(s) and keep the lid(s) closed.
  - ✓ Grade and pave the waste receptacle area to prevent run-on of stormwater.
  - ✓ Install a roof over the waste receptacle area.
  - ✓ Install a low containment berm around the waste receptacle area.
  - ✓ Use and maintain drip pans under waste receptacles.

- ❑ Post "no littering" signs.



### Employee Training Program

- ❑ Educate employees about facility-wide pollution prevention measures and goals.
- ❑ Train designated employees (e.g., those involved with the handling or management of fuels) on proper fueling and cleanup procedures.
- ❑ Train designated employees upon hiring and annually thereafter on proper methods for handling and disposing of waste. Make sure that all employees understand stormwater discharge prohibitions, wastewater discharge requirements, and these best management practices.
- ❑ Ensure that employees are familiar with the site's spill control plan and/or proper spill cleanup procedures.
- ❑ Use a training log or similar method to document training. The training log should include entries for:
  - ✓ Training topic,
  - ✓ Trainer,
  - ✓ Attendees,
  - ✓ Frequency,
  - ✓ Comments,
  - ✓ Target date for completion of training, and
  - ✓ Date completed.

## Vehicle and Equipment Fueling SC-20



### Quality Assurance and Record Keeping

- ❑ Keep accurate maintenance logs that document minimum BMP activities performed for vehicle and equipment fueling, quantities of materials removed, and improvement actions.
- ❑ Keep accurate logs of spill response actions that document what types of liquids were spilled, how it was cleaned up, and how the waste was disposed.
- ❑ Establish procedures to complete logs and file them in the central office.

### Potential Capital Facility Costs and Operation & Maintenance Requirements

#### Facilities

- ❑ The retrofitting of existing fueling areas to minimize stormwater exposure or spill runoff can be expensive. Good design must occur during the initial installation. Extruded curb along the "upstream" side of the fueling area to prevent stormwater run-on is of modest cost.
- ❑ Capital investments will likely be required at some sites if adequate cover and containment facilities do not exist and can vary significantly depending upon site conditions.

#### Maintenance

- ❑ Most of the operations and maintenance activities associated with implementing this BMP are integrally linked to routine operations as previously described. Therefore additional O&M is not required.
- ❑ For facilities responsible for pre-treating their wastewater prior to discharging, the proper functioning of structural treatment system is an important maintenance consideration.
- ❑ Routine cleanout of sumps and oil/water separators is required for the devices to maintain their effectiveness, usually at least once a month. During periods of heavy rainfall, cleanout is required more often to ensure pollutants are not washed through the system. Sediment removal is also required on a regular basis to keep the device working efficiently.

### Supplemental Information

#### Designing New Installations

The elements listed below should be included in the design and construction of new or substantially remodeled facilities.

#### Fuel Dispensing Areas

- ❑ Fuel dispensing areas must be paved with Portland cement concrete (or equivalent smooth impervious surface), with a 2 to 4% slope to prevent ponding, and must be

## Vehicle and Equipment Fueling SC-20

separated from the rest of the site by a grade break that prevents run-on of stormwater to the extent practicable. The fuel dispensing area is defined as extending 6.5 feet from the corner of each fuel dispenser or the length at which the hose and nozzle assembly may be operated plus 1 foot, whichever is less. The paving around the fuel dispensing area may exceed the minimum dimensions of the "fuel dispensing area" stated above.

- The fuel dispensing area must be covered, and the cover's minimum dimensions must be equal to or greater than the area within the grade break or the fuel dispensing area, as defined above. The cover must not drain onto the fuel dispensing area.
- If necessary, install and maintain an oil control device in the appropriate catch basin(s) to treat runoff from the fueling area.

### Outdoor Waste Receptacle Area

- Grade and pave the outdoor waste receptacle area to prevent run-on of stormwater to the extent practicable.

### Air/Water Supply Area

- Grade and pave the air/water supply area to prevent run-on of stormwater to the extent practicable.

### Designated Fueling Area

- If your facility has large numbers of mobile equipment working throughout the site and you currently fuel them with a mobile fuel truck, consider establishing a designated fueling area. With the exception of tracked equipment such as bulldozers and perhaps small forklifts, most vehicles should be able to travel to a designated area with little lost time. Place temporary "caps" over nearby catch basins or manhole covers so that if a spill occurs it is prevented from entering the storm drain.

### Examples

The Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasure (SPCC) Plan, which is required by law for some facilities, is an effective program to reduce the number of accidental spills and minimize contamination of stormwater runoff.

The City of Palo Alto has an effective program for commercial vehicle service facilities. Many of the program's elements, including specific BMP guidance and lists of equipment suppliers, are also applicable to industrial facilities.

### References and Resources

Orange County Stormwater Program, Best Management Practices for Industrial/Commercial Business Activities. Available online at: <http://ocwatersheds.com/documents/bmp/industrialcommercialbusinessactivities>.

## Vehicle and Equipment Fueling SC-20

Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, 2013. *Industrial Stormwater Best Management Practices Manual- BMP 8 Vehicle, Pavement and Building Washing*. Available online at: <http://www.deq.state.or.us/wq/wpermit/docs/IndBMP021013.pdf>

Sacramento Stormwater Management Program. *Best Management Practices for Industrial Storm Water Pollution Control*. Available online at: <http://www.msa.saccounty.net/sactostormwater/documents/guides/industrial-BMP-manual.pdf>.

Sacramento County Environmental Management Stormwater Program: Best Management Practices - Vehicle Washing. Available online at: <http://www.emd.saccounty.net/EnvHealth/Stormwater/Stormwater-BMPs.html>.

Santa Clara Valley Urban Runoff Pollution Prevention Program. <http://www.scvurppp-w2k.com/>.

US EPA. National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System - Stormwater Menu of BMPs - Municipal Vehicle and Equipment Washing. Available online at: <http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=browse&RItem=detail&bmp=134>.

Washington State Department of Ecology, 2012. *Vehicle and Equipment Washwater Discharges Best Management Practices Manual*. Publication no. WQ-R-95-056. Available online at: <https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/publications/95056.pdf>.

## Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning SC-21

### Description

Wash water from vehicle and equipment cleaning activities performed outdoors or in areas where wash water flows onto the ground can contribute toxic hydrocarbons and other organic compounds, oils and greases, nutrients, phosphates, heavy metals, and suspended solids to stormwater runoff. Use of the procedures outlined below can prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to stormwater during vehicle and equipment cleaning.

### Approach

Reduce potential for pollutant discharge through source control pollution prevention and BMP implementation. Successful implementation depends on effective training of employees on applicable BMPs and general pollution prevention strategies and objectives.

### General Pollution Prevention Protocols

- If possible, use properly maintained off-site commercial washing and steam cleaning businesses whenever possible. These businesses are better equipped to handle and properly dispose of the wash waters.
- Use dry cleaning methods to remove debris and sweep area; avoid washing with water when possible.
- Good housekeeping practices can minimize the risk of contamination from wash water discharges.
- Use biodegradable, phosphate-free detergents for washing vehicles as appropriate.
- Emphasize the connection between the storm drain system and runoff, help reinforce that vehicle and equipment washing activities affect local water quality through storm drain stenciling programs.

### Objectives

- Cover
- Contain
- Educate
- Reduce/Minimize
- Product Substitution

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment	✓
Nutrients	✓
Trash	✓
Metals	✓
Bacteria	✓
Oil and Grease	✓
Organics	✓

### Minimum BMPs Addressed

Good Housekeeping	✓
Preventative Maintenance	✓
Spill and Leak Prevention and Response	✓
Material Handling & Waste Management	✓
Erosion and Sediment Controls	✓
Employee Training Program	✓
Quality Assurance Record Keeping	✓



## Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning SC-21

- Map on-site storm drain locations to avoid discharges to the storm drain system.
- Designate specific wash area with clarifier or place wash areas away from storm drain connections.



### Good Housekeeping

- Mark the area clearly as a wash area by:
  - ✓ Posting signs stating that only washing is allowed in wash area; and
  - ✓ Providing information on how washing is to be done.
- Provide trash containers in wash area.
- Have all vehicle and equipment washing done in areas designed to collect and hold the wash and rinse water or effluent generated. Recycle, collect or treat wash water effluent prior to discharge to the sanitary sewer system.
- If washing/cleaning must occur on-site, consider washing vehicles and equipment inside the building or on an impervious surface to control the targeted constituents by directing them to the sanitary sewer.
- If washing must occur on-site and outdoor:
  - ✓ Use designated paved wash areas. This area must be covered or bermed to collect the wash water and graded to direct the wash water to a treatment or disposal facility.
  - ✓ Do not conduct oil changes and other engine maintenance in the designated washing area. Perform these activities in a place designated for oil change and maintenance activities.
  - ✓ Cover the wash area when not in use to prevent contact with rain water.
- Do not permit steam cleaning wash water to enter the storm drain system.
- If possible, conduct pressure and steam cleaning at appropriate off-site areas to avoid generating runoff with high pollutant concentrations.



### Preventative Maintenance

- Install sumps or drain lines to collect wash water for treatment.
- Use hoses with nozzles that automatically turn off when left unattended.
- Perform routine inspections of drain lines, holding tanks, and hoses and repair leaks immediately.

## Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning SC-21

- Perform routine inspection and maintenance of wash water recycling and treatment systems.



### Spill Response and Prevention Procedures

- Keep the spill prevention and control plan up-to-date.
- Have an emergency plan, equipment, and trained personnel ready at all times to deal immediately with major spills.
- Collect all spilled liquids and properly dispose of them.
- Store and maintain appropriate spill cleanup materials in a location known to all near the designated wash area.



### Material Handling and Waste Management

- Collect all wash water from vehicle and equipment cleaning operations. Consider treating and reusing or discharging wash waters to a sanitary sewer system.
- Large quantities of wash waters may require treatment at the facility. Treatment using a process treatment system (e.g., holding tank, filtration system, and related appurtenances) will require engineering and capital expenditures.
- Collect and treat small amounts of wash water at the facility and either recycle or discharge to the sanitary sewer system or collect and dispose of as an industrial waste.
- Discharge wash waters into sanitary sewer only after contacting local sewer authority to find out if pretreatment is required.



### Employee Training Program

- Train employees on proper cleaning and wash water disposal procedures and conduct "refresher" courses on a regular basis.
- Train staff on proper maintenance measures for the wash area.
- Train employees and contractors on proper spill containment and cleanup. The employee should have the tools and knowledge to immediately begin cleaning up a spill should one occur.
- Use a training log or similar method to document training.



### Quality Assurance and Record Keeping

- Keep accurate maintenance/inspection logs that document the minimum BMP activities performed for vehicle and equipment cleaning activities and improvement actions.

## Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning SC-21

- Keep accurate logs of spill response actions that document what was spilled, how it was cleaned up, and how the waste was disposed.
- Establish procedures to complete logs and file them in the central office.

### Other Facility-Specific Considerations

- Some municipalities may require pretreatment and monitoring of wash water discharges to the sanitary sewer.
- Steam cleaning can generate significant pollutant concentrations requiring that careful consideration be given to the environmental impacts and compliance issues related to the condensate wastewater generated.

### Potential Limitations and Work-Arounds

Some facilities may have space constraints, limited staffing and time limitations that may preclude implementation of certain BMPs. Provided below are typical limitations and recommended "work-arounds":

- Most car washing best management practices are inexpensive, and rely more on good housekeeping practices (where vehicles are washed, planning for the collection of wash water) than on expensive technology. However, the construction of a specialized area for vehicle washing can be expensive. Also, for facilities that cannot recycle their wash water, the cost of pre-treating wash water through either structural practices or planning for collection and hauling of contaminated water to sewage treatment plants can be cost-prohibitive.
- A potential work-around is to use properly maintained off-site commercial washing and steam cleaning businesses whenever possible.

### Potential Capital Facility Costs and Operation & Maintenance Requirements

#### Facilities

- Many facilities will already have indoor covered areas where vehicle and equipment cleaning takes place and will require no additional capital expenditures for providing cover.
- Capital investments will be required at some sites if systems to collect and recycle/treat and properly discharge wash water are not in place. The cost associated with these investments will vary depending on the size of the washing facility and local regulations regarding effluent wash water.

#### Maintenance

- Perform wash and collection system inspections and repair.
- Sweep washing areas frequently to remove solid debris.

## Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning SC-21

- Repair berms and dikes as necessary.
- Inspect and maintain sumps, oil/water separators, and on-site treatment/recycling units.

### Supplemental Information

#### Designated Cleaning Areas

- Washing operations outside should be conducted in a designated wash area having the following characteristics:
  - ✓ Paved with Portland cement concrete
  - ✓ Covered and bermed to prevent contact with stormwater and contain wash water
  - ✓ Sloped for wash water collections
  - ✓ Drainage system for wash water to the sanitary or recycle treatment process waste sewer, or to a dead-end sump equipped with an oil/water separator if necessary.

### References and Resources

Orange County Stormwater Program, Best Management Practices for Industrial/Commercial Business Activities. Available online at: <http://ocwatersheds.com/documents/hmp/IndustrialCommercialBusinessActivities>.

Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, 2013. *Industrial Stormwater Best Management Practices Manual- BMP 8 Vehicle, Pavement and Building Washing*. Available online at: <http://www.deq.state.or.us/swq/wqpermit/docs/IndBMP021413.pdf>.

Sacramento Stormwater Management Program. *Best Management Practices for Industrial Storm Water Pollution Control*. Available online at: <http://www.msa.sacounty.net/sactostormwater/documents/guides/industrial-BMP-manual.pdf>.

Sacramento County Environmental Management Stormwater Program: Best Management Practices - Vehicle Washing. Available online at: <http://www.emd.sacounty.net/EnvHealth/Stormwater/Stormwater-BMPs.html>.

Santa Clara Valley Urban Runoff Pollution Prevention Program. <http://www.scvurppp.y2k.com/>.

US EPA. National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System - Stormwater Menu of BMPs - Municipal Vehicle and Equipment Washing. Available online at: <http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdcs/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=browse&Rbut ton=detail&bmp=134>.

## Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning SC-21

Washington State Department of Ecology, 2012. *Vehicle and Equipment Washwater Discharges Best Management Practices Manual*. Publication no. WQ-R-95-056. Available online at: <http://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/publications/95056.pdf>.

## Vehicle and Equipment Repair SC-22

### Description

Vehicle or equipment maintenance and repair are potentially significant sources of stormwater pollution, due to use of harmful materials and wastes during maintenance and repair processes. Engine repair and service (e.g., parts cleaning), replacement of fluids (e.g., oil change), and outdoor equipment storage and parking (leaking vehicles) can impact water quality if stormwater runoff from areas with these activities becomes polluted by a variety of contaminants. Implementation of the following activities must be done where applicable to prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to stormwater from vehicle and equipment maintenance and repair activities.

### Approach

The BMP approach is to reduce the potential for pollutant discharges through source control pollution prevention and BMP implementation. Successful implementation depends on effective training of employees on applicable BMPs and general pollution prevention strategies and objectives. General pollution prevention protocols are presented followed by applicable minimum BMPs as required by the Industrial General Permit.

### General Pollution Prevention Protocols

- Designate a vehicle maintenance area designed to prevent stormwater pollution.
- Minimize contact of stormwater with outside operations through berming and appropriate drainage routing.
- Keep accurate maintenance logs to evaluate materials removed and improvements made.
- Switch to non-toxic chemicals for maintenance when possible.
- Choose cleaning agents that can be recycled.
- Use drop cloths and drip pans.

### Objectives

- Cover
- Contain
- Educate
- Reduce/Minimize
- Product Substitution

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment	
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	✓
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	✓
Organics	✓

### Minimum BMPs Covered

 Good Housekeeping	✓
 Preventative Maintenance	✓
 Spill and Leak	✓
 Prevention and Response	✓
 Material Handling & Waste Management	✓
 Erosion and Sediment Controls	✓
 Employee Training Program	✓
 Quality Assurance Record Keeping	✓



## Vehicle and Equipment Repair SC-22

- Minimize use of solvents. Clean parts without using solvents whenever possible, or use water-based solvents for cleaning.
- Recycle used motor oil, diesel oil, and other vehicle fluids and parts whenever possible.

### Operational Protocols

#### General

- Move maintenance and repair activities indoors whenever feasible.
- Place curbs around the immediate boundaries of process equipment.

#### Good Housekeeping

- Store idle equipment under cover
- Use a vehicle maintenance area designed to prevent stormwater pollution - minimize contact of stormwater with outside operations through berming and appropriate drainage routing.
- Avoid hosing down your work areas. If work areas are washed, collect and direct wash water to sanitary sewer. Use dry sweeping if possible.
- Paint signs on storm drain inlets to indicate that they are not to receive liquid or solid wastes.
- Post signs at sinks to remind employees not to pour wastes down drains.
- Clean yard storm drain inlets(s) regularly and especially after large storms.
- Do not pour materials down storm drains.
- Cover the work area to limit exposure to rain.
- Place curbs around the immediate boundaries of process equipment.
- Build a shed or temporary roof over areas where parked cars await repair or salvage, especially wrecked vehicles. Build a roof over vehicles kept for parts.

#### Preventive Maintenance and Repair Activities

- Provide a designated area for vehicle maintenance.
- Inspect vehicles and equipment for leaks regularly and repair immediately.
- Make sure incoming vehicles are checked for leaking oil and fluids. Do not allow leaking vehicles or equipment on-site without correcting the source of the leak and cleaning up any spill.
- Keep equipment clean; don't allow excessive build-up of oil and grease.

## Vehicle and Equipment Repair SC-22

- Perform all vehicle fluid removal or changing inside or under cover if possible to prevent the run-on of stormwater and the runoff of spills.
- Use a tarp, ground cloth, or drip pans beneath the vehicle or equipment to capture all spills and drips if temporary work is being conducted outside. Collected drips and spills must be disposed, reused, or recycled properly.
- It is important to sweep the maintenance area weekly, if it is paved, to collect loose particles, and wipe up spills with rags and other absorbent material immediately. Do not hose down the area to a storm drain.
- Establish standard procedures to prevent spillage/leakage of fluids including:
  - ✓ Keep a drip pan under the vehicle while you unclip hoses, unscrew filters, or remove other parts. Use a drip pan under any vehicle that might leak while working on it to keep splatters or drips off the shop floor.
  - ✓ Promptly transfer used fluids to the proper waste or recycling drums. Do not leave drip pans or other open containers lying around.
  - ✓ Keep drip pans or containers under vehicles or equipment that may drip during repairs.
  - ✓ Do not change motor oil or perform equipment maintenance in non-appropriate areas.
- Drain oil and other fluids first if the vehicle or equipment is to be stored outdoors. Elevate and tarp stored vehicles and equipment.
- Monitor parked vehicles closely for leaks. Pans should be placed under any leaks to collect the fluids for proper disposal or recycling.
- Mechanics should clean vehicle parts without using liquid cleaners wherever possible to reduce waste.
- Steam cleaning and pressure washing may be used instead of solvent parts cleaning. The wastewater generated from steam cleaning must be discharged to an on-site oil water separator that is connected to a sanitary sewer or blind sump. Non-caustic detergents should be used instead of caustic cleaning agents, detergent-based or water-based cleaning systems in place of organic solvent degreasers, and non-chlorinated solvent in place of chlorinated organic solvents for parts cleaning. Refer to SC21 for more information on steam cleaning.
- Fifth-wheel bearings on trucks require routine lubrication. Typically chassis grease is applied to the fifth-wheel bearing at rates that result in grease dripping off of the bearing into the environment. To address this concern the following options are available:
  - ✓ Use specialized lubricants with good adhesion (e.g., stay in place) properties. Carefully follow manufacturer's label regarding the use of adhesive lubricant for

truck fifth-wheels. Typically this means applying no more than 8 oz. of grease. No visible extrusion of lubricant from the fifth-wheel bearing when truck and trailer are connected should be present.

- ✓ Use on-board truck or on-board trailer automatic lubrication systems. If these systems apply lube thinner than National Grease Lubrication Institute #2, equipment for collection of used lubricant is needed to prevent excess lubricant from dripping off the truck.
- ✓ Use plastic or Teflon plates instead of grease or other lubricants. Carefully follow manufacturer's instructions for installation and operation.
- Use one of the following for lubricating vehicle-trailer coupling:
  - ✓ Specialized adhesive lubricants;
  - ✓ Grease-free fifth wheel slip plates (e.g., plastic or Teflon coatings); and
  - ✓ On-Board automatic lubricating systems.

#### Spill and Leak Prevention and Response Procedures

- Keep your spill prevention and control plan up-to-date.
- Place an adequate stockpile of spill cleanup materials where it will be readily accessible.
- Clean leaks, drips, and other spills with as little water as possible. Use rags for small spills, a damp mop for general cleanup, and dry absorbent material for larger spills. Use the following three-step method for cleaning floors:
  - ✓ Clean spills with rags or other absorbent materials;
  - ✓ Sweep floor using dry absorbent material; and
  - ✓ Mop the floor.
- Mop water may be discharged to the sanitary sewer via a toilet or sink.
- Remove the adsorbent materials promptly and dispose of properly when using adsorbent materials on small spills.

#### Material Handling and Waste Management

- Designate a special area to drain and replace motor oil, coolant, and other fluids, where there are no connections to the storm drain or the sanitary sewer, and drips and spills can be easily cleaned up.
- Drain all fluids immediately from wrecked vehicles. Ensure that the drain pan or drip pan is large enough to contain drained fluids (e.g., larger pans are needed to contain antifreeze, which may gush from some vehicles).



## Vehicle and Equipment Repair SC-22

- ❑ Do not pour liquid waste to floor drains, sinks, outdoor storm drain inlets, or other storm drains or sewer connections.
- ❑ Do not put used or leftover cleaning solutions, solvents, and automotive fluids and in the sanitary sewer.
- ❑ Collect leaking or dripping fluids in drip pans or containers. Fluids are easier to recycle if kept separate.
- ❑ Promptly transfer used fluids to the proper waste or recycling drums. Do not leave drip pans or other open containers lying around.
- ❑ Place oil filter in a funnel over a waste oil recycling drum to drain excess oil before disposal since municipalities prohibit or discourage disposal of these items in solid waste facilities.
- ❑ Oil filters can also be recycled. Ask your oil supplier or recycler about recycling oil filters. Oil filters disposed of in trashcans or dumpsters can leak oil and contaminate stormwater.
- ❑ Store cracked batteries in a non-leaking secondary container and dispose of properly at recycling or household hazardous waste facilities.



### Employee Training Program

- ❑ Train employees and contractors in the proper handling and disposal of engine fluids and waste materials.
- ❑ Employees should have the tools and knowledge to immediately begin cleaning up a spill should one occur.
- ❑ Conduct annual training to ensure that employees are familiar with the facility's spill control plan and/or proper spill cleanup procedures (You can use reusable cloth rags to clean up small drips and spills instead of disposables; these can be washed by a permitted industrial laundry. Do not clean them at home or at a coin-operated laundry business).
- ❑ Use a training log or similar method to document training.



### Quality Assurance and Recordkeeping

- ❑ Keep accurate maintenance logs to evaluate materials removed and improvements made.
- ❑ Establish procedures to collect and file maintenance logs in the central office.

## Vehicle and Equipment Repair SC-22

### Other Facility-Specific Considerations

#### Parts Cleaning

Vehicle and equipment maintenance facilities often must clean parts as a part of day-to-day operations. The following activities should be considered:

- ❑ Clean vehicle parts without using liquid cleaners wherever possible to reduce waste.
- ❑ Steam cleaning and pressure washing may be used instead of solvent parts cleaning.
- ❑ Wastewater generated from steam cleaning must be discharged to an on-site oil water separator that is connected to a sanitary sewer or blind sump.
- ❑ Use non-caustic detergents instead of caustic cleaning agents, detergent-based or water-based cleaning systems in place of organic solvent degreasers, and non-chlorinated solvent in place of chlorinated organic solvents for parts cleaning. Refer to SC21 for more information on steam cleaning.

### Potential Limitations and Work-Arounds

- ❑ Some facilities may have space constraints and time limitations that may preclude all work from being conducted indoors.
  - ✓ Designate specific areas for outdoor activities.
  - ✓ Require employees to understand and follow preventive maintenance and spill and leak prevention BMPs.
- ❑ It may not be possible to contain and clean up spills from vehicles/equipment brought on-site after working hours.
  - ✓ Provide a designated area for afterhours deliveries.
  - ✓ Install spill kits.
- ❑ Drain pans (usually 1 ft. x 1 ft.) are generally too small to contain antifreeze
  - ✓ Purchase or fabricate large drip pans (3 ft. x 3 ft.) with sufficient volume to contain expected quantities of liquids based on equipment/vehicle specifications.
- ❑ Dry floor cleaning methods may not be sufficient for some spills.
  - ✓ Use three-step method instead.
- ❑ Identification of engine leaks may require some use of solvents.
  - ✓ Minimize the use of solvents and use drip pans to collect spills and leaks.
- ❑ Prices for recycled materials and fluids may be higher than those of non-recycled materials.

## Vehicle and Equipment Repair SC-22

- ❑ Some facilities may be limited by a lack of providers of recycled materials, and by the absence of businesses to provide services such as hazardous waste removal, structural treatment practice maintenance, or solvent equipment and solvent recycling.

### Potential Facilities and Maintenance Requirements

#### Facilities Requirements

- ❑ For facilities that already have covered areas where maintenance takes place, harbors or other means to retain spills and leaks, and/ have other appropriate constructed systems for containment, there may not need to be any significant new capital investment. Capital costs will likely be required at some sites if adequate cover and containment facilities do not exist and can vary significantly depending upon site conditions.



### Maintenance Requirements

- ❑ Most of the operations and maintenance activity associated with implementing this BMP are integrally linked to routine operations as previously described. Therefore, significant additional operations and maintenance efforts are not likely to be required.
- ❑ For facilities responsible for pre-treating their wastewater prior to discharging, the proper functioning of structural treatment system is an important maintenance consideration. Routine cleanout of oil and grease is required for the devices to maintain their effectiveness, usually at least once a month. During periods of heavy rainfall, cleanout is required more often to ensure pollutants are not washed through the trap. Sediment removal is also required on a regular basis to keep the device working efficiently.
- ❑ It is important to sweep the maintenance area weekly, if it is paved, to collect loose particles, and wipe up spills with rags and other absorbent material immediately. Do not hose down the area to a storm drain.

### Supplemental Information

#### Waste Reduction

Parts are often cleaned using solvents such as trichloroethylene, 1,1,1-trichloroethane or methylene chloride. Many of these cleaners are harmful and must be disposed of as a hazardous waste. Cleaning without using liquid cleaners (e.g., wire brush) whenever possible reduces waste. Prevent spills and drips of solvents and cleansers to the shop floor. Do all liquid cleaning at a centralized station so the solvents and residues stay in one area. Locate drip pans, drain boards, and drying racks to direct drips back into a solvent sink or fluid holding tank for reuse. Reducing the number of solvents makes recycling easier and reduces hazardous waste management costs. Often, one solvent can perform a job as well as two different solvents.

- ❑ Clean parts without using liquid cleaners whenever possible to reduce waste.
- ❑ Prevent spills and drips of solvents and cleansers to the shop floor.

## Vehicle and Equipment Repair SC-22

- ❑ Do all liquid cleaning at a centralized station so the solvents and residues stay in one area.

- ❑ Locate drip pans, drain boards, and drying racks to direct drips back into a solvent sink or fluid holding tank for reuse.

### Recycling

Separating wastes allows for easier recycling and may reduce treatment costs. Keep hazardous and non-hazardous wastes separate, do not mix used oil and solvents, and keep chlorinated solvents (e.g., 1,1,1-trichloroethane) separate from non-chlorinated solvents (e.g., kerosene and mineral spirits).

Many products made of recycled (i.e., refined or purified) materials are available. Engine oil, transmission fluid, antifreeze, and hydraulic fluid are available in recycled form. Buying recycled products supports the market for recycled materials.

- ❑ Recycling is always preferable to disposal of unwanted materials.
- ❑ Separate wastes for easier recycling. Keep hazardous and non-hazardous wastes separate, do not mix used oil and solvents, and keep chlorinated solvents separate from non-chlorinated solvents.
- ❑ Label and track the recycling of waste material (e.g., used oil, spent solvents, batteries).
- ❑ Purchase recycled products to support the market for recycled materials.

### Safer Alternatives

If possible, eliminate or reduce the amount of hazardous materials and waste by substituting non-hazardous or less hazardous material:

- ❑ Use non-caustic detergents instead of caustic cleaning for parts cleaning.
- ❑ Use detergent-based or water-based cleaning systems in place of organic solvent degreasers. Wash water may require treatment before it can be discharged to the sewer.
- ❑ Replace chlorinated organic solvents with non-chlorinated solvents. Non-chlorinated solvents like kerosene or mineral spirits are less toxic and less expensive to dispose of properly. Check list of active ingredients to see whether it contains chlorinated solvents.
- ❑ Choose cleaning agents that can be recycled.

### References and Resources

Orange County Stormwater Program, Best Management Practices for Industrial/Commercial Business Activities. Available online at: <http://ocwatersheds.com/documents/bmp/industrialcommercial/businessactivities>.

## Vehicle and Equipment Repair SC-22

Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, 2013. *Industrial Stormwater Best Management Practices Manual- BMP 8 Vehicle, Pavement and Building Washing*. Available online at: <http://www.deq.state.or.us/wq/wqpermit/docs/IndBMP021413.pdf>.

Sacramento Stormwater Management Program. *Best Management Practices for Industrial Storm Water Pollution Control*. Available online at: <http://www.msa.saccounty.net/sactostormwater/documents/guides/industrial-BMP-manual.pdf>.

Sacramento County Environmental Management Stormwater Program: Best Management Practices - Vehicle Washing. Available online at: <http://www.emd.saccounty.net/EnvHealth/Stormwater/Stormwater-BMPs.html>.

Santa Clara Valley Urban Runoff Pollution Prevention Program <http://www.scvurpp-w2k.com/>.

US EPA, National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System - Stormwater Menu of BMPs - Municipal Vehicle and Equipment Washing. Available online at: [http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=browse&R&I\\_top=detail&bmp=134](http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=browse&R&I_top=detail&bmp=134).

Washington State Department of Ecology, 2012. *Vehicle and Equipment Washwater Discharges Best Management Practices Manual*. Publication no. WQ-R-95-056. Available online at: <https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/publications/95056.pdf>.

## Outdoor Liquid Container Storage SC-31

### Description

Accidental releases of materials from above ground liquid storage tanks, drums, and dumpsters present the potential for contaminating stormwater with many different pollutants. Tanks may store many potential stormwater runoff pollutants, such as gasoline, aviation gas, diesel fuel, kerosene, oils, greases, lubricants and other distilled, blended and refined products derived from crude petroleum. Materials spilled, leaked, or lost from storage tanks may accumulate in soils or on other surfaces and be carried away by rainfall runoff. These source controls apply to containers located outside of a building used to temporarily store liquid materials and include installing safeguards against accidental releases, installing secondary containment, conducting regular inspections, and training employees in standard operating procedures and spill cleanup techniques.

### Approach

#### General Pollution Prevention Protocols

- Educate employees about pollution prevention measures and goals.
- Keep an accurate, up-to-date inventory of the materials delivered and stored on-site.
- Try to keep chemicals in their original containers, and keep them well labeled.
- Develop an operations plan that describes procedures for loading and/or unloading. Refer to SC-30 Outdoor Loading/Unloading of Materials for more detailed BMP information pertaining to loading and unloading of liquids.
- Protect materials from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal:
  - Cover the storage area with a roof.

### Objectives

- Cover
- Contain
- Educate
- Reduce/Minimize

### Targeted Constituents

Constituent	Controlled
Sediment	
Nutrients	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Trash	
Metals	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Organics	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### Minimum BMPs Covered

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Good Housekeeping
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preventative Maintenance
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spill and Leak Prevention and Response
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Material Handling & Waste Management
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Erosion and Sediment Controls
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Employee Training Program
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Quality Assurance Record Keeping



## Outdoor Liquid Container Storage SC-31

- Minimize stormwater run-on by enclosing the area or building a berm around it.
- Use a walled structure for storage of liquid containers.
- Use only watertight containers and keep the lids closed.
- Employ safeguards against accidental releases:
  - Provide overflow protection devices to warn operator or automatic shutdown transfer pumps.
  - Provide protection guards (bollards) around tanks and piping to prevent damage from a vehicle or forklift.
  - Provide clear tagging or labeling, and restrict access to valves to reduce human error.
  - Berm or surround tank or container with secondary containment system, including dikes, liners, vaults, or double walled tanks.
  - Be aware and ready to address the fact that some municipalities require secondary containment areas to be connected to the sanitary sewer, prohibiting any hard connections to the storm drain.
  - Contact the appropriate regulatory agency regarding environmental compliance for facilities with "spill ponds" designed to intercept, treat, and/or divert spills.
  - Have registered and specifically trained professional engineers identify and correct potential problems such as loose fittings, poor welding, and improper or poorly fitted gaskets for newly installed tank systems.
- Use MSDSs to ID hazardous components and keep incompatible products apart and to list/ have available appropriate PPE and clean-up products.

### Good Housekeeping

- Provide storage tank piping located below product level with a shut-off valve at the tank; ideally this valve should be an automatic shear valve with the shut-off located inside the tank.
- Provide barriers such as posts or guardrails, where tanks are exposed, to prevent collision damage with vehicles.
- Provide secure storage to prevent vandalism-caused contamination.
- Place tight-fitting lids on containers.

## Outdoor Liquid Container Storage SC-31

- Enclose or cover the containers where they are stored.
- Raise the containers off the ground by use of pallet or similar method, with provisions for spill control.
- Do not store liquid containers near the storm drainage system or surface waters.
- Sweep and clean the storage area regularly if it is paved, do not hose down the area a storm drain.

### Preventative Maintenance

- Inspect storage areas regularly for leaks or spills.
- Conduct routine inspections and check for external corrosion of material containers. Also check for structural failure, spills and overfills due to operator error, failure of piping system.
- Check for leaks or spills during pumping of liquids or gases from truck or rail car to a storage facility or vice versa.
- Visually inspect new tank or container installations for loose fittings, poor welding, and improper or poorly fitted gaskets.
- Inspect tank foundations, connections, coatings, and tank walls and piping system. Look for corrosion, leaks, cracks, scratches, and other physical damage that may weaken the tank or container system.
- Replace containers that are leaking, corroded, or otherwise deteriorating with ones in good condition. If the liquid chemicals are corrosive, containers made of compatible materials must be used instead of metal drums.
- New or secondary containers must be labeled with the product name and hazards.

### Spill Response and Prevention Procedures

- Keep your spill prevention and control plan up-to-date.
- Maintain an adequate stockpile of spill cleanup materials at locations where it will be readily accessible.
- Have an emergency plan, equipment, and trained personnel ready at all times to deal immediately with major spills.
- Collect spilled liquids and properly dispose of them.
- Remove the adsorbent materials promptly and dispose of properly when using adsorbent materials on small spills.
- Have employees trained in emergency spill cleanup procedures present when dangerous waste, liquid chemicals, or other wastes are delivered.

## Outdoor Liquid Container Storage SC-31

- ❑ Prevent operator errors by using engineering safeguards and thus reducing accidental releases of pollutants.



### Material Handling and Waste Management

- ❑ Contain the material in such a manner that if the container leaks or spills, the contents will not discharge, flow, or be washed into the storm drainage system, surface waters or groundwater.
- ❑ Place drip pans or absorbent materials beneath mounted container taps, and at potential drip and spill locations during filling and unloading of containers. Any collected liquids or soiled absorbent materials must be reused/recycled or properly disposed.
- ❑ Ensure that any underground or aboveground storage tanks are designed and managed in accordance with applicable regulations, identified as a potential pollution source, and have secondary containment such as a berm or dike with an impervious surface.
- ❑ Do not pour liquids into floor drains, sinks, outdoor storm drain inlets, or other storm drains or sewer connections.
- ❑ Collect leaking or dripping fluids in drip pans or containers. Fluids are easier to recycle if kept separate.
- ❑ Promptly transfer used fluids to the proper waste or recycling drums. Do not leave drip pans or other open containers lying around.



### Employee Training Program

- ❑ Train employee (e.g., fork lift operators) and contractors in proper spill containment and cleanup. The employees should have the tools and knowledge to immediately begin cleaning up a spill if one should occur.
- ❑ Train employees in proper spill response and prevention, materials handling, and waste management.
- ❑ Use a training log or similar method to document training.



### Quality Assurance and Record Keeping

- ❑ Keep accurate maintenance/inspection logs that document minimum BMP activities performed for liquid container storage and improvement actions.
- ❑ Keep accurate logs of spill response actions that document what was spilled, how it was cleaned up, and how the waste was disposed.
- ❑ Establish procedures to complete logs and file them in the central office.

### Other Facility-Specific Considerations

- ❑ Storage sheds often must meet building and fire code requirements.

September 2014

California Stormwater BMP Handbook  
Industrial and Commercial  
www.casqa.org

4 of 9

## Outdoor Liquid Container Storage SC-31

- ❑ The local fire district must be consulted for limitations on clearance of roof covers over containers used to store flammable materials.
- ❑ All specific standards set by Federal and State laws concerning the storage of oil and hazardous materials must be met.
- ❑ Storage of reactive, ignitable, or flammable liquids should comply with the Uniform Fire Code and the National Electric Code.
- ❑ Storage of oil and hazardous materials must meet specific Federal and State standards including:
  - ✓ Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasure Plan (SPCC) Plan;
  - ✓ Secondary containment;
  - ✓ Integrity and leak detection monitoring; and
  - ✓ Emergency preparedness plans.

### Potential Capital Facility Costs and Operation & Maintenance Requirements

#### Facilities

- ❑ Capital investments such as sheds, covers, dikes, and curbs will likely be required at some sites if adequate cover and containment facilities do not exist and can vary significantly depending upon site conditions.

#### Maintenance

- ❑ Most of the operations and maintenance activities associated with implementing this BMP are integrally linked to routine operations as previously described. Therefore additional O&M is not required.
- ❑ Conduct regular inspections and make repairs and improvements as necessary.
- ❑ Conduct regular broom dry-sweeping of area. Do not wash with water.

### Supplemental Information

The most common causes of unintentional releases are:

- ❑ Installation problems;
- ❑ Failure of piping systems (pipes, pumps, flanges, couplings, hoses, and valves);
- ❑ External corrosion and structural failure;
- ❑ Spills and overfills due to operator error; and
- ❑ Leaks during pumping of liquids or gases from truck or rail car to a storage tank or vice versa.

September 2014

California Stormwater BMP Handbook  
Industrial and Commercial  
www.casqa.org

5 of 9

## Outdoor Liquid Container Storage SC-31

### Aboveground Tank Leak and Spill Control

Storage of reactive, ignitable, or flammable liquids should comply with the Uniform Fire Code and the National Electric Code. Practices listed below should be employed to enhance the code requirements:

- ❑ Tanks should be placed in a designated area.
- ❑ Tanks located in areas where firearms are discharged should be encapsulated in concrete or the equivalent.
- ❑ Designated areas should be paved with Portland cement concrete, free of cracks and gaps, and impervious in order to contain leaks and spills.
- ❑ Liquid materials should be stored in UL approved double walled tanks or surrounded by a curb or dike to provide the volume to contain 10% of the volume of the containers or 110% of the volume of the largest container, whichever is greater. The area inside the curb should slope to a drain.
- ❑ For used oil or dangerous waste, a dead-end sump should be installed in the drain.
- ❑ Other liquids should be drained to the sanitary sewer if available. The drain must have a positive control such as a lock, valve, or plug to prevent release of contaminated liquids.
- ❑ Accumulated stormwater in petroleum storage areas should be passed through an oil/water separator.

Maintenance is critical to preventing leaks and spills. Conduct routine weekly inspections and:

- ❑ Check for external corrosion and structural failure.
- ❑ Check for spills and overfills due to operator error.
- ❑ Check for failure of piping system (pipes, pumps, flanger, coupling, hoses, and valves).
- ❑ Check for leaks or spills during pumping of liquids or gases from truck or rail car to a storage facility or vice versa.
- ❑ Inspect new tank or container installation visually for loose fittings, poor welding, and improper or poorly fitted gaskets.
- ❑ Inspect tank foundations, connections, coatings, and tank walls and piping system. Look for corrosion, leaks, cracks, scratches, and other physical damage that may weaken the tank or container system.
- ❑ Frequently release accumulated stormwater during the wet season.
- ❑ Have periodic integrity testing conducted by a qualified professional.

September 2014

California Stormwater BMP Handbook  
Industrial and Commercial  
www.casqa.org

6 of 9

## Outdoor Liquid Container Storage SC-31

### Dikes

One of the best protective measures against contamination of stormwater is the use of dikes. Containment dikes are berms or retaining walls that are designed to hold spills. Use of dikes is an effective pollution prevention measure for above ground storage tanks and railcar or tank truck loading and unloading areas. The dike surrounds the area of concern and holds the spill, keeping spill materials separated from the stormwater side of the dike area. Diking can be used in any industrial or municipal facility, but it is most commonly used for controlling large spills or releases from liquid storage areas and liquid transfer areas.

- ❑ For single-wall tanks, containment dikes should be large enough to hold the contents of the storage tank for the facility plus rain water.
- ❑ For trucks, diked areas should be capable of holding an amount equal to the volume of the tank truck compartment. Diked construction material should be strong enough to safely hold spilled materials.
- ❑ Dike materials can consist of earth, concrete, synthetic materials, metal, or other impervious materials.
- ❑ Strong acids or bases may react with metal containers, concrete, and some plastics.
- ❑ Where strong acids or bases are stored, alternative dike materials should be considered. More active organic chemicals may need certain special liners for dikes.
- ❑ Dikes may also be designed with impermeable materials to increase containment capabilities.
- ❑ Dikes should be inspected during or after significant storms or spills to check for washouts or overflows.
- ❑ Regular checks of containment dikes to insure the dikes are capable of holding spills should be conducted.
- ❑ Inability of a structure to retain stormwater, dike erosion, soggy areas, or changes in vegetation indicate problems with dike structures. Damaged areas should be patched and stabilized immediately.
- ❑ Earthen dikes may require special maintenance of vegetation such as mulching and irrigation.
- ❑ Remove accumulated stormwater after precipitation events and dispose of according to local regulations.

### Curbing

Curbing is a barrier that surrounds an area of concern. Curbing is similar to containment diking in the way that it prevents spills and leaks from being released into the environment. Curbing is usually small scaled and does not contain large spills to the degree that dikes can. Curbing is common at many facilities in small areas where

September 2014

California Stormwater BMP Handbook  
Industrial and Commercial  
www.casqa.org

7 of 9

handling and transfer of liquid materials occur. Curbing can redirect contaminated stormwater away from the storage area. It is useful in areas where liquid materials are transferred from one container to another. Asphalt is a common material used for curbing; however, curbing materials can include earth, concrete, synthetic materials, metal, or other impenetrable materials.

- ❑ Spilled materials should be removed immediately from curbed areas to allow space for future spills.
- ❑ Curbs should have manually-controlled pump systems rather than common drainage systems for collection of spilled materials.
- ❑ The curbed area should be inspected regularly to clear clogging debris.
- ❑ Maintenance should also be conducted frequently to prevent overflow of any spilled materials as curbed areas are designed only for smaller spills.
- ❑ Remove accumulated stormwater after precipitation events and dispose of according to local regulations.
- ❑ Curbing has the following advantages:
  - ✓ Excellent run-on control;
  - ✓ Inexpensive;
  - ✓ Ease of installment;
  - ✓ Provides option to recycle materials spilled in curb areas; and
  - ✓ Common industry practice.

**References and Resources**

Clark County Clean Water Program. 2009. *Clark County Stormwater Pollution Control Manual Best Management Practices for Businesses and Government Agencies, AS A2 & A3*. Available online at: <http://www.clark.wa.gov/boards/CleanWater/documents/PollutionControlManual.pdf>.

King County Storm Water Pollution Prevention Manual, 2009 *Commercial Best Management Practice (BMP) Activity Sheets: A-2 Storage of Liquid Materials in Stationary Tanks and A-3 Storage of Liquid Materials in Portable Containers*. Available online at: <http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/pollution-prevention-manual/commercial-bmp.aspx>.

Orange County Stormwater Program, Best Management Practices for Industrial/Commercial Business Activities. Available online at: <http://ocwatersheds.com/documents/bmp/industrialcommercialbusinessesactivities>.

US EPA. National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) *Industrial Fact Sheet Series for Activities Covered by EPA's MSGP*. Available online at: <http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/awsectors.cfm>.

**Outdoor Equipment Operations SC-32**

**Description**

Outside process equipment operations and maintenance can contaminate stormwater runoff. Activities, such as grinding, painting, coating, sanding, degreasing or parts cleaning, landfills and waste piles, and solid waste treatment and disposal are examples of process operations that can lead to contamination of stormwater runoff. The targeted constituents will vary for each site depending on the operation being performed.

**Approach**

Implement source control BMPs to limit exposure of outdoor equipment to direct precipitation and stormwater run-on. Refer to SC-22 Vehicle and Equipment Repair for additional information.

**General Pollution Prevention Protocols**

- ❑ Perform the activity during dry periods whenever possible.
- ❑ Install secondary containment measures where leaks and spills may occur.
- ❑ Use non-toxic chemicals for maintenance and minimize or eliminate the use of solvents.
- ❑ Connect process equipment area to public sanitary sewer or facility wastewater treatment system when possible. Some jurisdictions require that secondary containment areas be connected to the sanitary sewer, prohibiting any hard connections to the storm drain.

**Objectives**

- Cover
- Contain
- Educate
- Reduce/Minimize

**Targeted Constituents**

Sediment	✓
Nutrients	✓
Trash	✓
Metals	✓
Bacteria	✓
Oil and Grease	✓
Organics	✓

**Minimum BMPs Covered**

Good Housekeeping	✓
Preventative Maintenance	✓
Spill and Leak Prevention and Response	✓
Material Handling & Waste Management	✓
Erosion and Sediment Controls	✓
Employee Training Program	✓
Quality Assurance Record Keeping	✓

**Good Housekeeping**

- ❑ Manage materials and waste properly (see Material Handling and Waste Management) to reduce adverse impacts on stormwater quality.



**Outdoor Equipment Operations SC-32**

- ❑ Cover the work area with a permanent roof if possible.
- ❑ Use drop cloths for sanding and painting operations.
- ❑ Use a vacuum for fine particle clean-up in pavement cracks and crevices.
- ❑ Minimize contact of stormwater with outside process equipment operations through berming and drainage routing (run-on prevention).
- ❑ "Spot clean" leaks and drips routinely. Leaks are not cleaned up until the absorbent is picked up and disposed of properly.
- ❑ Paint signs on storm drain inlets to indicate that they are not to receive liquid or solid wastes.
- ❑ Use roll down or permanent walls when windy/breezy to prevent wind transport of particulates/pollutants.

**Preventative Maintenance**

- ❑ Design outdoor equipment areas to prevent stormwater runoff and spills. Use a perimeter drain or slope pavement inward with drainage to sump.
- ❑ Dry clean the work area regularly. Do not wash outdoor equipment with water if there is a direct connection to the storm drain.
- ❑ Pave area with concrete rather than asphalt.
- ❑ Inspect outdoor equipment regularly for leaks or spills. Also check for structural failure, spills and overfills due to operator error, and/or failure of piping system.
- ❑ Inspect and clean, if necessary, storm drain inlets and catch basins within the outdoor equipment area before October 1 each year.

**Spill Response and Prevention Procedures**

- ❑ Keep your Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasure (SPCC) Plan up-to-date.
- ❑ Have employees trained in emergency spill cleanup procedures present when dangerous waste, liquid chemicals, or other wastes are delivered.
- ❑ Place a stockpile of spill cleanup materials where it will be readily accessible.
- ❑ Prevent operator errors by using engineering safe guards and thus reducing accidental releases of pollutant.

**Material Handling and Waste Management**

## Outdoor Equipment Operations SC-32

- Do not pour liquid wastes into floor drains, sinks, outdoor storm drain inlets, or other storm drain or sewer connections.
- Collect leaking or dripping fluids in drip pans or containers. Fluids are easier to recycle if kept separate.
- Promptly transfer used fluids to the proper waste or recycling drums. Do not leave drip pans or other open containers lying around.
- Minimize the possibility of stormwater pollution from outside waste receptacles by doing at least one of the following:
  - Use only watertight waste receptacle(s) and keep the lid(s) closed.
  - Grade and pave the waste receptacle area to prevent run-on of stormwater.
  - Install a roof over the waste receptacle area.



### Employee Training Program

- Educate employees about pollution prevention measures and goals.
- Train employees on proper equipment operation and maintenance procedures.
- Train all employees upon hiring and annually thereafter on proper methods for handling and disposing of waste. Ensure that all employees understand stormwater discharge prohibitions, wastewater discharge requirements, and these best management practices.
- Use a training log or similar method to document training.
- Ensure that employees are familiar with the site's spill control plan and/or proper spill cleanup procedures.



### Quality Assurance and Record Keeping

- Keep accurate maintenance logs that document minimum BMP activities performed for outdoor equipment, types and quantities of materials removed and disposed of, and any improvement actions.
- Keep accurate logs of spill response actions that document what was spilled, how it was cleaned up, and how the waste was disposed.
- Establish procedures to complete logs and file them in the central office.

### Potential Limitations and Work-Arounds

Some facilities may have space constraints, limited staffing and time limitations that may preclude implementation of BMPs. Provided below are typical limitations and recommended "work-arounds."

## Outdoor Equipment Operations SC-32

- Providing cover over outdoor equipment may be impractical or cost-prohibitive.
  - Operate outdoor equipment only during periods of dry weather.
- Regular operations and time limitations may require outdoor activities during wet weather.
  - Designate specific areas for outdoor activities.
  - Allow time for work area clean-up after each shift.
  - Require employees to understand and follow preventive maintenance and spill and leak prevention BMPs.
  - Design and install secondary containment and good housekeeping BMPs for outdoor equipment area.
- Storage sheds often must meet building and fire code requirements.

### Potential Capital Facility Costs and Operation & Maintenance Requirements

#### Facilities

- Many facilities will already have indoor covered areas where vehicle and equipment repairs take place and will require no additional capital expenditures.
- If outdoor activities are required, construction of berms or other means to retain spills and leaks may require appropriate constructed systems for containment. These containment areas may require significant new capital investment.
- Capital investments will likely be required at some sites if adequate cover and containment facilities do not exist and can vary significantly depending upon site conditions.

#### Maintenance

- Most of the operations and maintenance activities associated with implementing this BMP are integrally linked to routine operations as previously described. Therefore additional O&M is not required.
- For facilities responsible for pre-treating their wastewater prior to discharging, the proper functioning of structural treatment system is an important maintenance consideration.
- Routine cleanout of oil and grease is required for the devices to maintain their effectiveness, usually at least once a month. During periods of heavy rainfall, cleanout is required more often to ensure pollutants are not washed through the trap. Sediment removal is also required on a regular basis to keep the device working efficiently.

## Outdoor Equipment Operations SC-32

### References and Resources

- Minnesota Pollution Control Agency. *Industrial Stormwater Best Management Practices Guidebook BMP 26 Fueling and Liquid Loading/Unloading Operations*. Available online at: <http://www.pca.state.mn.us/index.php/view-document.html?id=10557>.
- New Jersey Department of Environmental Protection, 2013. *Basic Industrial Stormwater General Permit Guidance Document NJPDES General Permit No. NJ0088345*. Available online at: [http://www.nj.gov/dep/dwq/pdf/5G2\\_guidance\\_color.pdf](http://www.nj.gov/dep/dwq/pdf/5G2_guidance_color.pdf).
- Orange County Stormwater Program, Best Management Practices for Industrial/Commercial Business Activities. Available online at: <http://ocwatersheds.com/documents/bmp/industrialcommercialbusinessactivities>.
- Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, *Industrial Stormwater Best Management Practices Manual- BMP 26 Fueling and Liquid Loading/Unloading Operations*, February 2013. Available online at: <http://www.deq.state.or.us/wq/wqpermit/docs/IndBMP021413.pdf>.
- Sacramento Stormwater Management Program. *Best Management Practices for Industrial Storm Water Pollution Control*. Available online at: <http://www.msa.sacounty.net/sactostormwater/documents/guides/industrial-BMP-manual.pdf>.
- Sacramento County Environmental Management Stormwater Program: Best Management Practices. Available online at: <http://www.emd.sacounty.net/EnvHealth/Stormwater/Stormwater-BMPs.html>.
- Santa Clara Valley Urban Runoff Pollution Prevention Program. <http://www.scvrppp-wrk.com/>.
- US EPA, National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System – Industrial Fact Sheet Series for Activities Covered by EPA's Multi Sector General Permit. Available online at: <http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/ewsectors.cfm>.

## Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials SC-33

### Description

Stockpiles of raw materials, by-products, and finished products exposed to rain and/or runoff can pollute stormwater. Stormwater can become contaminated when materials wash off or dissolve into water due to improper storage and containment. To prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to stormwater from raw material delivery and storage, pollution prevention and source control measures must be implemented, such as minimizing the storage of hazardous materials on-site, enclosing or covering materials, storing materials in a designated area, installing secondary containment, conducting regular inspections, preventing stormwater run-on and runoff, and training employees and subcontractors. This fact sheet focuses on source control BMPs for stockpiles of solid materials; if the raw material, by-product, or product is a liquid, more information for outside storage of liquids can be found under SC-31 Outdoor Liquid Container Storage.

### Approach

Reduce potential for pollutant discharge through source control pollution prevention and BMP implementation. Successful implementation depends on effective training of employees on applicable BMPs and general pollution prevention strategies and objectives.

### General Pollution Prevention Protocols

- Emphasize employee education for successful BMP implementation.
- Store materials that could contaminate stormwater inside or under permanent cover. If this is not feasible, then all outside storage areas should be covered with a roof and bermed or enclosed to prevent stormwater contact.
- Elevate and tarp solid materials such as beams, metal, etc.
- Minimize the inventory of raw materials kept outside.

### Objectives

- Cover
- Contain
- Educate
- Reduce/Minimize

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Trash	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Metals	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bacteria	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Oil and Grease	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Organics	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>Minimum BMPs Covered</b>	
Good Housekeeping	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Preventative Maintenance	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Spill and Leak Prevention and Response	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Material Handling & Waste Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Erosion and Sediment Controls	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Employee Training Program	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Quality Assurance Record Keeping	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>



## Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials SC-33

- Keep an accurate, up-to-date inventory of the materials delivered and stored on-site.
- Stormwater runoff that could potentially be contaminated by materials stored outdoors should be drained to the sanitary sewer if available. The drain must have a positive control such as a lock, valve, or plug to prevent release of contaminated liquids.



### Good Housekeeping

- If raw materials cannot all be stored inside or under permanent cover, prevent exposure to direct precipitation and stormwater run-on by installing a storm-resistant waterproof covering made of polyethylene, polypropylene or hypalon over all materials stored outside. The covers must be in place at all times when work with the stockpiles is not occurring (Applicable to small stockpiles only).
- Implement erosion control practices at the perimeter of the facility site and at any catch basins to prevent erosion of the stockpiled material off-site, if the stockpiles are so large that they cannot feasibly be covered and contained.
- Minimize stormwater run-on by enclosing the area or building a berm around it.
- Keep storage areas clean and dry.
- Slope paved areas in a manner that minimizes pooling of water on the site, particularly with materials that may leach pollutants into stormwater and/or groundwater, such as compost, logs, and wood chips. A minimum slope of 1.5% is recommended.
- Secure drums stored in an area where unauthorized persons may not gain access to prevent accidental spillage, pilferage, or any unauthorized use.
- Install curbing or berms along the perimeter of the area to prevent the run-on of uncontaminated stormwater from adjacent areas as well as runoff of stormwater from the stockpile areas.
- Slope the area inside the curb or berm to a drain with sump. The sump should be equipped with an oil and water separator if applicable for materials stored onsite.
- Do not store materials on top of or directly adjacent to storm drain inlets.
- Cover wood products treated with chromated copper arsenate, ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate, creosote, or pentachlorophenol with properly secured tarps or store indoors.



### Preventative Maintenance

- Maintain outdoor storage containers in good condition. Replace leaky or otherwise inadequate containers as necessary.
- Maintain outdoor waterproof covers (e.g., tarps) in good condition and properly secure them to be storm resistant. Replace tarps damaged by UV exposure or wear and tear on a regular basis.

## Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials SC-33

- Perform routine inspection of storm drains and sumps and regularly remove accumulated materials.
- Dry clean the work area regularly. Do not wash outdoor material storage areas with water if there is a direct connection to the storm drain.
- Pave outdoor storage areas for liquids such as solvents with concrete rather than asphalt.
- Conduct regular inspections of storage areas so that leaks and spills are detected as soon as possible.
- Routinely inspect berms, curbing, containment, and sediment controls for proper function and repair as necessary.



### Spill and Leak Prevention and Response

- Keep the facility spill prevention and control plan up-to-date.
- Place a stockpile of spill cleanup materials, such as brooms, dustpans, and vacuum sweepers (if desired) near the storage area where it will be readily accessible.
- Have employees trained in spill containment and cleanup present during the loading/unloading of hazardous or otherwise dangerous materials.



### Erosion and Sediment Controls

- Keep materials covered to prevent erosion of stockpiles. This may not be feasible for large stockpiles.
- Install sediment controls such as fiber rolls around the perimeter of stockpiles to prevent transport of raw materials to the storm drain.
- Install drain inlet protection around all inlets to prevent raw materials from entering storm drain.
- Install sediment controls such as silt fence around the perimeter of the site to prevent transport of raw materials to the storm drain or offsite surface waters.



### Employee Training Program

- Educate employees about pollution prevention measures and goals.
- Train employees how to properly store outdoor raw materials using the source control BMPs described above.
- Use a training log or similar method to document training.
- Ensure that employees are familiar with the site's spill control plan and/or proper spill cleanup procedures.

## Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials SC-33



### Quality Assurance and Record Keeping

- Keep accurate maintenance logs that document minimum BMP activities performed for outdoor storage of raw materials, types and quantities of materials removed and disposed of, and any improvement actions.
- Keep accurate logs of spill response actions that document what was spilled, how it was cleaned up, and how the waste was disposed.
- Establish procedures to complete logs and file them in the central office.

### Other Facility-Specific Considerations

- Storage sheds often must meet building and fire code requirements. Storage of reactive, ignitable, or flammable liquids must comply with the Uniform Fire Code and the National Electric Code.
- Some municipalities require that secondary containment areas (regardless of size) be connected to the sanitary sewer, prohibiting any hard connections to the storm drain.
- The local fire district must be consulted for limitations on clearance of roof covers over containers used to store flammable materials.

### Potential Limitations and Work-Arounds

Some facilities may have space constraints, limited staffing and time limitations that may preclude implementation of BMPs. Provided below are typical limitations and recommended "work-arounds"

- Space limitations may preclude storing all materials indoors.
  - ✓ Implement good housekeeping, preventative maintenance, and erosion and sediment controls as described above.

### Potential Capital Facility Costs and Operation & Maintenance Requirements

#### Facilities

- Many facilities will already have indoor covered areas where raw materials will be stored and will require no additional capital expenditures.
- If outdoor storage of materials is required, construction of berms or other means to prevent stormwater run-on and runoff may require appropriate constructed systems for containment. These containment areas may require significant new capital investment.
- Purchase and installation of erosion and sediment controls will require additional capital investments, and this amount will vary depending on site characteristics.
- Capital investments will likely be required at some sites if adequate cover and containment facilities do not exist and can vary significantly depending upon site conditions.

## Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials SC-33

### Maintenance

- Accurate and up-to-date inventories should be kept of all stored materials.
- Berms and curbs may require periodic repair and patching.
- Parking lots or other surfaces near bulk materials storage areas should be swept periodically to remove debris blown or washed from storage areas.
- Sweep paved storage areas regularly for collection and disposal of loose solid materials, do not hose down the area to a storm drain or conveyance ditch.
- Erosion and sediment controls require regular inspection and periodic replacement or reinstallation.

### Supplemental Information

#### Raw Material Containment

Paved areas should be sloped in a manner that minimizes pooling of water on the site, particularly with materials that may leach pollutants into stormwater and/or groundwater, such as compost, logs, and wood chips. A minimum slope of 1.5% is recommended.

- Curbing or berms should be placed along the perimeter of the area to prevent the run-on of uncontaminated stormwater from adjacent areas as well as runoff of stormwater from stockpile areas.
- The storm drainage system should be designed to minimize use of catch basins in the interior of the area as they tend to rapidly fill with manufacturing material.

The area should be sloped to drain stormwater to the perimeter where it can be collected or to internal drainage alleyways where material is not stockpiled.

The "doghouse" design has been used to store small liquid containers. The roof and flooring design prevent contact with direct rain or runoff. The doghouse has two solid structural walls and two canvas covered walls. The flooring is wire mesh about secondary containment.

### References and Resources

Minnesota Pollution Control Agency, *Industrial Stormwater Best Management Practices Guidebook*. Available online at: <http://www.mnstate.nm.us/index.php/view-document.html?id=10557>.

New Jersey Department of Environmental Protection, 2013, *Basic Industrial Stormwater General Permit Guidance Document NJPDES General Permit No NJ0088315*. Available online at: [http://www.nj.gov/dep/dwa/pd/5G2\\_guidance\\_color.pdf](http://www.nj.gov/dep/dwa/pd/5G2_guidance_color.pdf).

Orange County Stormwater Program, *Best Management Practices for Industrial/Commercial Business Activities*. Available online at: <http://ocwatersheds.com/documents/bmp/industrialcommercialbusinessactivities>

## Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials SC-33

Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, 2013. *Industrial Stormwater Best Management Practices Manual*. Available online at: <http://www.deq.state.or.us/wq/wqpermit/docs/IndBMP021413.pdf>

Sacramento Stormwater Management Program. *Best Management Practices for Industrial Storm Water Pollution Control*. Available online at: <http://www.msa.saccounty.net/sactostormwater/documents/guides/industrial-BMP-manual.pdf>.

Sacramento County Environmental Management Stormwater Program: Best Management Practices. Available online at: <http://www.emd.saccounty.net/EnvHealth/Stormwater/Stormwater-BMPs.html>.

Santa Clara Valley Urban Runoff Pollution Prevention Program. <http://www.scvurppp-wrk.com/>.

US EPA. National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System – Industrial Fact Sheet Series for Activities Covered by EPA's Multi Sector General Permit. Available online at: <http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/swsectors.cfm>.

## Waste Handling & Disposal SC-34

### Description

Improper storage and handling of solid wastes can allow toxic compounds, oils and greases, heavy metals, nutrients, suspended solids, and other pollutants to enter stormwater runoff. The discharge of pollutants to stormwater from waste handling and disposal can be prevented and reduced by tracking waste generation, storage, and disposal; reducing waste generation and disposal through source reduction, reuse, and recycling; and preventing run-on and runoff.

### Approach

Reduce potential for pollutant discharge through source control pollution prevention and BMP implementation. Successful implementation depends on effective training of employees on applicable BMPs and general pollution prevention strategies and objectives.

### General Pollution Prevention Protocols

- Accomplish reduction in the amount of waste generated using the following source controls:
  - Production planning and sequencing;
  - Process or equipment modification;
  - Raw material substitution or elimination;
  - Loss prevention and housekeeping;
  - Waste segregation and separation; and
  - Close loop recycling.
- Establish a material tracking system to increase awareness about material usage. This may reduce spills and minimize contamination, thus reducing the amount of waste produced.
- Recycle materials whenever possible.

### Objectives

- Cover
- Contain
- Educate
- Reduce/Minimize
- Product Substitution

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment

Nutrients

Trash


Metals


Bacteria


Oil and Grease

Organics


### Minimum BMPs Covered


 Good Housekeeping


 Preventative Maintenance

 Spill and Leak Prevention and Response

 Material Handling & Waste Management

 Erosion and Sediment Controls

 Employee Training Program

 Quality Assurance Record Keeping



## Waste Handling & Disposal SC-34

- Use the entire product before disposing of the container.
- To the extent possible, store wastes under cover or indoors after ensuring all safety concerns such as fire hazard and ventilation are addressed.
- Provide containers for each waste stream at each work station. Allow time after shift to clean area.



### Good Housekeeping

- Cover storage containers with leak proof lids or some other means. If waste is not in containers, cover all waste piles (plastic tarps are acceptable coverage) and prevent stormwater run-on and runoff with a berm. The waste containers or piles must be covered except when in use.
- Use drip pans or absorbent materials whenever grease containers are emptied by vacuum trucks or other means. Grease cannot be left on the ground. Collected grease must be properly disposed of as garbage.
- Dispose of rinse and wash water from cleaning waste containers into a sanitary sewer (if allowed by the local sewer authority). Do not discharge wash water to the street or storm drain. Clean in a designated wash area that drains to a clarifier.
- Transfer waste from damaged containers into safe containers.
- Take special care when loading or unloading wastes to minimize losses. Loading systems can be used to minimize spills and fugitive emission losses such as dust or mist. Vacuum transfer systems can minimize waste loss.
- Keep the waste management area clean at all times by sweeping and cleaning up spills immediately.
- Use dry methods when possible (e.g., sweeping, use of absorbents) when cleaning around restaurant/food handling dumpster areas. If water must be used after sweeping/using absorbents, collect water and discharge through grease interceptor to the sewer.
- Stencil or demarcate storm drains on the facility's property with prohibitive message regarding waste disposal.
- Cover waste piles with temporary covering material such as reinforced tarpaulin, polyethylene, polyurethane, polypropylene or hypalon.
- If possible, move the activity indoor after ensuring all safety concerns such as fire hazard and ventilation are addressed.



### Preventative Maintenance

- Prevent stormwater run-on from entering the waste management area by enclosing the area or building a berm around the area.
- Prevent waste materials from directly contacting rain.

## Waste Handling & Disposal SC-34

- Cover waste piles with temporary covering material such as reinforced tarpaulin, polyethylene, polyurethane, polypropylene or hypalon.
- Cover the area with a permanent roof if feasible.
- Cover dumpsters to prevent rain from washing waste out of holes or cracks in the bottom of the dumpster.
- Check waste containers weekly for leaks and to ensure that lids are on tightly. Replace any that are leaking, corroded, or otherwise deteriorating.
- Sweep and clean the waste management area regularly. Use dry methods when possible (e.g., sweeping, vacuuming, use of absorbents) when cleaning around restaurant/food handling dumpster areas. If water must be used after sweeping/using absorbents, collect water and discharge through grease interceptor to the sewer.
- Inspect and replace faulty pumps or hoses regularly to minimize the potential of releases and spills.
- Repair leaking equipment including valves, lines, seals, or pumps promptly.



### Spill Response and Prevention Procedures

- Keep your spill prevention and plan up-to-date.
- Have an emergency plan, equipment and trained personnel ready at all times to deal immediately with major spills.
- Collect all spilled liquids and properly dispose of them.
- Store and maintain appropriate spill cleanup materials in a location known to all near the designated wash area.
- Ensure that vehicles transporting waste have spill prevention equipment that can prevent spills during transport. Spill prevention equipment includes:
  - Vehicles equipped with baffles for liquid waste; and
  - Trucks with sealed gates and spill guards for solid waste.



### Material Handling and Waste Management

#### Litter Control

- Post "No Littering" signs and enforce anti-litter laws.
- Provide a sufficient number of litter receptacles for the facility.
- Clean out and cover litter receptacles frequently to prevent spillage.

#### Waste Collection

- Keep waste collection areas clean.

- Inspect solid waste containers for structural damage regularly. Repair or replace damaged containers as necessary.
- Secure solid waste containers; containers must be closed tightly when not in use.
- Do not fill waste containers with washout water or any other liquid.
- Ensure that only appropriate solid wastes are added to the solid waste container. Certain wastes such as hazardous wastes, appliances, fluorescent lamps, pesticides, etc., may not be disposed of in solid waste containers (see chemical/ hazardous waste collection section below).
- Do not mix wastes; this can cause chemical reactions, make recycling impossible, and complicate disposal. Affix labels to all waste containers.

**Chemical/Hazardous Wastes**

- Select designated hazardous waste collection areas on-site.
- Store hazardous materials and wastes in covered containers and protect them from vandalism.
- Place hazardous waste containers in secondary containment.
- Make sure that hazardous waste is collected, removed, and disposed of only at authorized disposal areas.
- Hazardous waste cannot be reused or recycled; it must be disposed of by a licensed hazardous waste hauler.

**Employee Training Program**

- Educate employees about pollution prevention measures and goals.
- Train employees how to properly handle and dispose of waste using the source control BMPs described above.
- Train employees and subcontractors in proper hazardous waste management.
- Use a training log or similar method to document training.
- Ensure that employees are familiar with the site's spill control plan and/or proper spill cleanup procedures.

**Quality Assurance and Record Keeping**

- Keep accurate maintenance logs that document minimum BMP activities performed for waste handling and disposal, types and quantities of waste disposed of, and any improvement actions.
- Keep accurate logs of spill response actions that document what was spilled, how it was cleaned up, and how the waste was disposed.

- Establish procedures to complete logs and file them in the central office.

**Potential Capital Facility Costs and Operation & Maintenance Requirements**

**Facilities**

- Capital costs will vary substantially depending on the size of the facility and the types of waste handled. Significant capital costs may be associated with reducing wastes by modifying processes or implementing closed-loop recycling.
- Many facilities will already have indoor covered areas where waste materials will be stored and will require no additional capital expenditures for providing cover.
- If outdoor storage of wastes is required, construction of berms or other means to prevent stormwater run-on and runoff may require appropriate constructed systems for containment.
- Capital investments will likely be required at some sites if adequate cover and containment facilities do not exist and can vary significantly depending upon site conditions.

**Maintenance**

- Check waste containers weekly for leaks and to ensure that lids are on tightly. Replace any that are leaking, corroded, or otherwise deteriorating.
- Sweep and clean the waste management area regularly. Use dry methods when possible (e.g., sweeping, use of absorbents) when cleaning around restaurant/food handling dumpster areas. If water must be used after sweeping/using absorbents, collect water and discharge through grease interceptor to the sewer.
- Inspect and replace faulty pumps or hoses regularly to minimize the potential of releases and spills.
- Repair leaking equipment including valves, lines, seals, or pumps promptly.

**References and Resources**

Minnesota Pollution Control Agency, *Industrial Stormwater Best Management Practices Guidebook*. Available online at: <http://www.pca.state.mn.us/index.php/view-document.html?id=10557>.

New Jersey Department of Environmental Protection, 2013. *Basic Industrial Stormwater General Permit Guidance Document NJPDES General Permit No NJ0088315*, Revised. Available online at: [http://www.nj.gov/dep/dwg/pdf/5G2\\_guidance\\_color.pdf](http://www.nj.gov/dep/dwg/pdf/5G2_guidance_color.pdf).

Orange County Stormwater Program, *Best Management Practices for Industrial/Commercial Business Activities*. Available online at: <http://ocwatersheds.com/documents/bmp/industrialcommercialbusinessactivities>

Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, 2013. *Industrial Stormwater Best Management Practices Manual- BMP 26 Fueling and Liquid Loading/Unloading Operations*. Available online at: <http://www.deq.state.or.us/wq/wqpermit/docs/InJBMP021413.pdf>.

Sacramento Stormwater Management Program. *Best Management Practices for Industrial Storm Water Pollution Control*. Available online at: <http://www.msa.sacounty.net/sacstormwater/documents/guides/Industrial-BMP-manual.pdf>.

Sacramento County Environmental Management Stormwater Program: Best Management Practices. Available online at: <http://www.emd.sacounty.net/EnvHealth/Stormwater/Stormwater-BMPs.html>.

Santa Clara Valley Urban Runoff Pollution Prevention Program. <http://www.scvurppp-w2k.com/>

US EPA. National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System – Industrial Fact Sheet Series for Activities Covered by EPA's Multi Sector General Permit. Available online at: <http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/swsectors.cfm>.

**Description**

Promote the use of less harmful products and products that contain little or no TMDL and 303(d) list pollutants. Alternatives exist for most product classes including chemical fertilizers, pesticides, cleaning solutions, janitorial chemicals, automotive and paint products, and consumables (batteries, fluorescent lamps).

**Approach**

Pattern a new program after the many established programs around the state and country. Integrate this best management practice as much as possible with existing programs at your facility.

Develop a comprehensive program based on:

- The "Precautionary Principle," which is an alternative to the "Risk Assessment" model that says it's acceptable to use a potentially harmful product until physical evidence of its harmful effects are established and deemed too costly from an environmental or public health perspective. For instance, a risk assessment approach might say it's acceptable to use a pesticide until there is direct proof of an environmental impact. The Precautionary Principle approach is used to evaluate whether a given product is safe, whether it is really necessary, and whether alternative products would perform just as well.
- Environmentally Preferable Purchasing Program to minimize the purchase of products containing hazardous ingredients used in the facility's custodial services, fleet maintenance, and facility maintenance in favor of using alternate products that pose less risk to employees and to the environment.
- Integrated Pest Management (IPM) or Less-Toxic Pesticide Program, which uses a pest management approach that minimizes the use of toxic chemicals and gets rid of pests

**Objectives**

- Educate
- Reduce/Minimize
- Product Substitution

**Targeted Constituents**

Sediment	
Nutrients	✓
Trash	
Metals	✓
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	✓
Organics	✓

**Minimum BMPs Covered**

Good Housekeeping	
Preventative Maintenance	
Spill and Leak Prevention and Response	
Material Handling & Waste Management	
Erosion and Sediment Controls	
Employee Training Program	✓
Quality Assurance Record Keeping	QA





by methods that pose a lower risk to employees, the public, and the environment.

- ❑ Energy Efficiency Program including no-cost and low-cost energy conservation and efficiency actions that can reduce both energy consumption and electricity bills, along with long-term energy efficiency investments.

Consider the following mechanisms for developing and implementing a comprehensive program:

- ❑ Policies
- ❑ Procedures
  - ✓ Standard operating procedures (SOPs);
  - ✓ Purchasing guidelines and procedures; and
  - ✓ Bid packages (services and supplies).
- ❑ Materials
  - ✓ Preferred or approved product and supplier lists;
  - ✓ Product and supplier evaluation criteria;
  - ✓ Training sessions and manuals; and
  - ✓ Fact sheets for employees.

Implement this BMP in conjunction with the Vehicle and Equipment Management fact sheets (SC-20 – SC-22) and SC-41 Building and Grounds Maintenance.



**Employee Training Program**

- ❑ Employees who handle potentially harmful materials should be trained in the use of safer alternatives.
- ❑ Purchasing departments should be trained on safer alternative products and encouraged to procure less hazardous materials and products that contain little or no harmful substances or TMDL pollutants.
- ❑ Employees and contractors / service providers can both be educated about safer alternatives by using information developed by a number of organizations including the references and resources provided in this fact sheet.

**Potential Limitations and Work-Arounds**

Some facilities may have space constraints, limited staffing and time limitations that may preclude implementation of BMPs. Provided below are typical limitations and recommended “work-arounds”

- ❑ Alternative products may not be available, suitable, or effective in every case.

- ✓ Minimize use of hazardous/harmful products if no alternative product is available.

**Regulatory Considerations**

This BMP has no regulatory requirements unless local/municipal ordinance applies. Existing regulations already encourage facilities to reduce the use of hazardous materials through incentives such as reduced:

- ❑ Specialized equipment storage and handling requirements;
- ❑ Storm water runoff sampling requirements;
- ❑ Training and licensing requirements; and
- ❑ Record keeping and reporting requirements.

**Cost Considerations**

- ❑ The primary cost is for staff time to: 1) develop new policies and procedures and 2) educate purchasing departments and employees who handle potentially harmful materials about the availability, procurement, and use of safer alternatives.
- ❑ Some alternative products may be slightly more expensive than conventional products.

**Supplemental Information**

The following discussion provides some general information on safer alternatives. More specific information on particular hazardous materials and the available alternatives may be found in the references and resources listed below.

- ❑ Automotive products – Less toxic alternatives are not available for many automotive products, especially engine fluids. But there are alternatives to grease lubricants, car polishes, degreasers, and windshield washer solution. Refined motor oil is also available.
- ❑ Vehicle/Trailer lubrication – Fifth wheel bearings on trucks require routine lubrication. Adhesive lubricants are available to replace typical chassis grease.
- ❑ Cleaners – Vegetables-based or citrus-based soaps are available to replace petroleum-based soaps/detergents.
- ❑ Paint products – Water-based paints, wood preservatives, stains, and finishes with low VOC content are available.
- ❑ Pesticides – Specific alternative products or methods exist to control most insects, fungi, and weeds.
- ❑ Chemical Fertilizers – Compost and soil amendments are natural alternatives.
- ❑ Consumables – Manufacturers have either reduced or are in the process of reducing the amount of heavy metals in consumables such as batteries and fluorescent lamps.

All fluorescent lamps contain mercury, however low-mercury containing lamps are now available from most hardware and lighting stores. Fluorescent lamps are also more energy efficient than the average incandescent lamp.

- ❑ Janitorial chemicals – Even biodegradable soap can harm fish and wildlife before it biodegrades. Biodegradable does not mean non-toxic. Safer products and procedures are available for floor stripping and cleaning, as well as carpet, glass, metal, and restroom cleaning and disinfecting. Use paper products with post-consumer recycled content and implement electric had dryers.

**Examples**

There are a number of business and trade associations, and communities with effective programs. Some of the more prominent are listed below in the references and resources section.

**References and Resources**

Note: Many of these references provide alternative products for materials that typically are used inside and disposed to the sanitary sewer as well as alternatives to products that usually end up in the storm drain.

**General Sustainable Practices and Pollution Prevention Including Pollutant-Specific Information**

- California Department of Toxic Substances Control, <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/PollutionPrevention/GreenTechnology/Index.cfm>.
- CalRecycle, <http://www.calrecycle.ca.gov/Business/Regulated.htm>.
- City of Santa Monica Office of Sustainability and Environment, <http://www.smgov.net/departments/ose/>.
- City of Palo Alto, <http://www.city.palo-alto.ca.us/cleanbay>.
- City and County of San Francisco, Department of the Environment, <http://www.sfenvironment.org/toxics-health/greener-business-practices>.
- Green Business Program, <http://www.greenbiz.ca.gov/GRlocal.html>.
- Product Stewardship Institute, <http://www.productstewardship.us/index.cfm>.
- Sacramento Clean Water Business Partners, <http://www.sacstormwater.org/CleanWaterBusinessPartners/CleanWaterBusinessPartners.html>.
- USEPA. National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Stormwater Discharges From Industrial Facilities, <http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/indust.cfm>.
- USEPA Region IX Pollution Prevention Program, <http://www.epa.gov/regions/waste/p2/business.html>.

Western Sustainability and Pollution Prevention Network, <http://wsppn.org/>

**Metals (mercury, copper)**

National Electrical Manufacturers Association – Environmental Stewardship, <http://www.nema.org/Policy/Environmental-Stewardship/pages/default.aspx>.

Sustainable Conservation, <http://www.suscon.org>.

Auto Recycling Project

Brake Pad Partnership

**Pesticides and Chemical Fertilizers**

Bio-Integral Resource Center, <http://www.birc.org>.

California Department of Pesticide Regulation, <http://www.cdpr.ca.gov/dprprograms.htm>.

University of California Statewide IPM Program, <http://www.ipm.ucdavis.edu/default.html>.

**Dioxins**

Bay Area Dioxins Project, [http://www.abag.ca.gov/bayarea/dioxin/project\\_materials.htm](http://www.abag.ca.gov/bayarea/dioxin/project_materials.htm).

## Contaminated or Erodible Areas SC-40

### Description

Areas within an industrial site that are bare of vegetation or are subject to activities that promote the suppression of vegetation are often subject to erosion. In addition, they may or may not be contaminated from past or current activities. If the area is temporarily bare because of construction, see SC-42 Building Repair, Remodeling, and Construction. Sites with excessive erosion or the potential for excessive erosion should consider employing the soil erosion BMPs identified in the Construction BMP Handbook. Note that this fact sheet addresses soils that do not exceed hazardous waste criteria (see Title 22 California Code of Regulations for Hazardous Waste Criteria).

### Approach

Reduce potential for pollutant discharge through source control pollution prevention and BMP implementation. Successful implementation depends on effective training of employees on applicable BMPs and general pollution prevention strategies and objectives.

### General Pollution Prevention Protocols

Implement erosion and sediment control BMPs to stabilize soils and reduce pollutant discharges from contaminated or erodible surfaces.

### Erosion and Sediment Controls

- Preserve natural vegetation whenever possible. See also EC-2 Preservation of Existing Vegetation, in the Construction BMP Handbook.
- Analyze soil conditions.
- Remove contaminated soil and dispose of properly.
- Stabilize loose soils by re-vegetating whenever possible. See also EC-4 Hydroseeding, in the Construction BMP Handbook.

### Objectives

- Cover
- Contain
- Educate
- Reduce/Minimize
- Product Substitution

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment	✓
Nutrients	✓
Trash	✓
Metals	✓
Bacteria	✓
Oil and Grease	✓
Organics	✓

### Minimum BMPs Covered

 Good Housekeeping	
 Preventative Maintenance	
 Spill and Leak Prevention and	
 Material Handling & Waste Management	
 Erosion and Sediment Controls	✓
 Employee Training Program	✓
 Quality Assurance Record Keeping	✓



## Contaminated or Erodible Areas SC-40

- Utilize non-vegetative stabilization methods for areas prone to erosion where vegetative options are not feasible. Examples include:
  - ✓ Areas of vehicular or pedestrian traffic such as roads or paths;
  - ✓ Arid environments where vegetation would not provide timely ground coverage, or would require excessive irrigation;
  - ✓ Rocky substrate, infertile or droughty soils where vegetation would be difficult to establish; and
  - ✓ Areas where vegetation will not grow adequately within the construction time frame.

There are several non-vegetative stabilization methods and selection should be based on site-specific conditions. See also EC-16 Non-Vegetative Stabilization, in the Construction BMP Handbook.

- Utilize chemical stabilization when needed. See also EC-5 Soil Binders, in the Construction BMP Handbook.
- Use geosynthetic membranes to control erosion if feasible. See also EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats, in the Construction BMP Handbook.
- Stabilize all roadways, entrances, and exits to sufficiently control discharges of erodible materials from discharging or being tracked off the site. See also TC 1-3 Tracking Control, in the Construction BMP Handbook.
- Implement wind erosion control measures as necessary. See also WE-1 Wind Erosion Control, in the Construction BMP Handbook.

### Employee Training Program

- Educate employees about pollution prevention measures and goals.
- Train employees how to properly install and maintain the erosion and sediment source control BMPs described above. Detailed information is provided in the Construction BMP Handbook.

- Use a training log or similar method to document training.

### Quality Assurance and Record Keeping

- Keep accurate logs that document actions taken to maintain and improve the effectiveness of the erosion and sediment control BMPs described above.
- Keep accurate logs of spill response actions that document what was spilled, how it was cleaned up, and how the waste was disposed.
- Establish procedures to complete logs and file them in the central office.

## Contaminated or Erodible Areas SC-40

### Potential Capital Facility Costs and Operation & Maintenance Requirements

#### Facilities

- Many facilities do not have contaminated or erodible areas and will require no additional capital expenditures.
- For sites with contaminated or erodible areas, purchase and installation of erosion and sediment controls will require additional capital investments, and this amount will vary depending on site characteristics and the types of BMPs being implemented.
- Minimize costs by maintaining existing vegetation and limiting site operations on bare soils.

#### Maintenance

- The erosion and sediment control BMPs described above require periodic inspection and maintenance to remain effective. The cost of these actions will vary depending on site characteristics and the types of BMPs being implemented.
- Irrigation costs may be required to establish and maintain vegetation.

### Supplemental Information

#### Stabilization of Erodible Areas

Preserving stabilized areas minimizes erosion potential, protects water quality, and provides aesthetic benefits. The most effective way to control erosion is to preserve existing vegetation. Preservation of natural vegetation provides a natural buffer zone and an opportunity for infiltration of stormwater and capture of pollutants in the soil matrix. This practice can be used as a permanent source control measure.

Vegetation preservation should be incorporated into the site. Preservation requires good site management to minimize operations on bare soils where vegetation exists. Proper maintenance is important to ensure healthy vegetation that can control erosion. Different species, soil types, and climatic conditions will require different maintenance activities such as mulching, fertilizing, liming, irrigation, pruning and weed and pest control.

The preferred approach is to leave as much native vegetation on-site as possible, thereby reducing or eliminating any erosion problem. However, assuming the site already has contaminated or erodible surface areas, there are four possible courses of action which can be taken:

- The area can be revegetated if it is not in use and therefore not subject to damage from site activities. In as much as the area is already devoid of vegetation, special measures are likely necessary. Lack of vegetation may be due to the lack of water and/or poor soils. The latter can perhaps be solved with fertilization, or the ground may simply be too compacted from prior use. Improving soil conditions may be sufficient to support the recovery of vegetation. Use process wastewater for irrigation if possible, and see the Construction BMP Handbook for further procedures on establishing vegetation.

## Contaminated or Erodible Areas SC-40

- Watering trucks to prevent dust.
- Chemical stabilization can be used as an alternate method in areas where temporary seeding practices cannot be used because of season or climate. It can provide immediate, effective, and inexpensive erosion control. Application rates and procedures recommended by the manufacturer should be followed as closely as possible to prevent the products from forming ponds and creating large areas where moisture cannot penetrate the soil. See also EC-5, Soil Binders, in the Construction BMP Handbook for more information. Advantages of chemical stabilization include:
  - ✓ Applied easily to the surface;
  - ✓ Stabilizes areas effectively; and
  - ✓ Provides immediate protection to soils that are in danger of erosion.
- Contaminated soils should be cleaned up or removed. This requires determination of the level and extent of the contamination. Removal must comply with State and Federal regulations; permits must be acquired and fees paid.
- Non-vegetated stabilization methods are suitable for permanently protecting from erosion by water and wind. Non-vegetated stabilization should only be utilized when vegetation cannot be established due to soil or climatic conditions, or where vegetation may be a potential fire hazard.

Examples of non-vegetative stabilization BMPs are provided below:

- ✓ **Decomposed Granite (DG) and Gravel Mulch** are suitable for use in areas where vegetation establishment is difficult, on flat surfaces, trails and pathways, and when used in conjunction with a stabilizer or tackifier, on shallow slopes (i.e., 10:1 [H:V]). DG and gravel can also be used on shallow rocky slopes where vegetation cannot be established for permanent erosion control.
- ✓ **Degradable Mulches** can be used to cover and protect soil surfaces from erosion both in temporary and permanent applications. In many cases, the use of mulches by themselves requires routine inspection and re-application. See EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch, EC-6 Straw Mulch, EC-8 Wood Mulch, or EC-14 Compost Blankets of the Construction BMP Handbook for more information.
- ✓ **Geotextiles and Mats** can be used as a temporary stand-alone soil stabilization method. Depending on material selection, geotextiles and mats can be a short-term (3 months - 1 year) or long-term (1-2 years) temporary stabilization method. For more information on geotextiles and mats see EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats of the Construction BMP Handbook.
- ✓ **Rock Slope Protection** can be used when the slopes are subject to scour or have a high erosion potential, such as slopes adjacent to flowing waterways or slopes subject to overflow from detention facilities (spillways).

## Contaminated or Erodible Areas SC-40

- ✓ **Soil Binders** can be used for temporary stabilization of stockpiles and disturbed areas not subject to heavy traffic. See EC-5 Soil Binders for more information. References and Resources.

### References and Resources

California Stormwater Quality Association 2012, *Construction Stormwater Best Management Practice Handbook*. Available at <http://www.casqa.org>.

City of Seattle, Seattle Public Utilities Department of Planning and Development, 2009. *Stormwater Manual Vol. 1 Source Control Technical Requirements Manual*.

Orange County Stormwater Program, Best Management Practices for Industrial/Commercial Business Activities. Available online at: <http://ocwatersheds.com/documents/bmp/industrialcommercialbusinessactivities>.

Sacramento Stormwater Management Program. *Best Management Practices for Industrial Storm Water Pollution Control*. Available online at: <http://www.msa.saccounty.net/sactostormwater/documents/guides/Industrial-BMP-manual.pdf>.

Santa Clara Valley Urban Runoff Pollution Prevention Program, <http://www.scvurpp-wqf.com/>.

Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, *Best Management Practices Handbook*, 2012. Available online at: <http://www.tahoebmp.org/Documents/2012%20BMP%20Handbook.pdf>.

The Storm Water Managers Resource Center, <http://www.stormwatercenter.net>.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, *Construction Site Stormwater Runoff Control*. Available online at: [http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=min\\_measure&min\\_measure\\_id=4](http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=min_measure&min_measure_id=4).

## Vegetated Swale

TC-30

### General Description

Vegetated swales (also referred to as bioswales, biofiltration swales, or landscaped swales) are open, shallow channels with vegetation covering the side slopes and bottom that collect and slowly convey runoff flow to downstream discharge points. They are designed to treat runoff through filtering by the vegetation in the channel, filtering through a subsol matrix, and/or infiltration into the underlying soils. Swales can be natural or manmade. They trap particulate pollutants (suspended solids and trace metals), promote infiltration, reduce flow velocity, and increase time of concentration of stormwater runoff. Vegetated swales can be implemented to provide effective pretreatment for detention and infiltration stormwater BMPs.

Vegetated swales can serve as part of a stormwater drainage system and can replace curbs, gutters and storm sewer systems. Therefore, swales are best suited for small landscaped portions of industrial or commercial facilities with low peak flow rates. They are not well suited to treat stormwater runoff from industrial areas that have insufficient source control BMPs.

### Inspection/Maintenance Considerations

A thick vegetative cover is needed for vegetated swales to function properly. Usually, swales require little more than normal landscape maintenance activities such as irrigation and mowing to maintain pollutant removal efficiency. Swales can become a nuisance due to mosquito breeding in standing water if obstructions develop (e.g., debris accumulation, invasive vegetation) and/or if proper drainage slopes are not implemented and maintained. The application of fertilizers and pesticides should be minimized.

### Advanced BMPs Covered



### Maintenance Concerns

- Channelization
- Vegetation/Landscape Maintenance
- Vector Control
- Aesthetics
- Flow Obstructions

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment	▲
Nutrients	●
Trash	●
Metals	▲
Bacteria	●
Oil and Grease	▲
Organics	▲

### Legend (Removal Effectiveness)

- Low ■ High ▲ Medium
- Requires Pretreatment

Note: The removal effectiveness ratings shown in this table are for properly designed, sized, and maintained BMPs; some configurations will have variations in pollutant effectiveness.



## Vegetated Swale

TC-30

Preparation Activities	Suggested Frequency
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Inspect after seeding and after first major storms for any damages.</li> </ul>	Post construction
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Inspect for signs of erosion, damage to vegetation, channelization of flow, debris, and litter, and areas of sediment accumulation. Perform inspections at the beginning and end of the wet season. Additional inspections after periods of heavy runoff are desirable.</li> </ul>	Semi-annual
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Inspect level spreader for clogging, grass alongside slopes for erosion and formation of rills or gullies, and sand/soil bed for erosion problems.</li> </ul>	Annual
Maintenance Activities	Suggested Frequency
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Mow grass to maintain a height of 3–4 inches, for safety, aesthetic, or other purposes. Litter should always be removed prior to mowing. Clippage should be composted.</li> </ul>	As needed (frequent, seasonally)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Irrigate swale during dry season (April through October) or when necessary to maintain the vegetation.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Provide weed control, if necessary to control invasive species.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Remove litter, branches, rocks blockages, and other debris and dispose of properly.</li> </ul>	Semi-annual
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Maintain inlet flow spreader (if applicable).</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Repair any damaged areas within a channel identified during inspections. Erosion rills or gullies should be corrected as needed. Bare areas should be replanted as necessary.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Declug the pea gravel diaphragm, if necessary.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Correct erosion problems in the sand/soil bed of dry swales.</li> </ul>	Annual (as needed)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Plant an alternative grass species if the original grass cover has not been successfully established. Reseed and apply mulch to damaged areas.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Remove all accumulated sediment that may obstruct flow through the swale. Sediment accumulating near culverts and in channels should be removed when it builds up to 3 in. at any spot, or covers vegetation, or once it has accumulated to 10% of the original design volume. Replace the grass areas damaged in the process.</li> </ul>	As needed (infrequent)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Roto-till or cultivate the surface of the sand/soil bed of dry swales if the swale does not draw down within 48 hours.</li> </ul>	

## Vegetated Swale

TC-30

### Additional Information

Research (Colwell et al., 2000) indicates that grass height and mowing frequency have little impact on pollutant removal. Consequently, mowing may only be necessary once or twice a year for safety or aesthetics or to suppress weeds and woody vegetation.

The swale bottom and side slopes should be covered with dense vegetative cover to filter pollutants out of runoff and helps reduce flow velocities and protect the swale from erosion. Fine, close-growing grasses are ideal because increasing the surface area of the vegetation exposed to runoff improves the effectiveness of the swale. Drought tolerant vegetation than can tolerate sediment and debris accumulations are best-suited for swales.

### References

California Department of Transportation, *Treatment BMP Technology Report (CTSW-RT-09-239.06)*, 2010. Available online at: <http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/stormwater/pdf/CTSW-RT-09-239-06.pdf>.

California Stormwater Quality Association, *Stormwater Best Management Practice Handbook, New Development and Redevelopment*, 2003. Available online at: <https://www.casqa.org/resources/bmp-handbooks/new-development-redevelopment-bmp-handbook>.

Colwell, Shanti R., Horner, Richard R., and Booth, Derek B., 2000. *Characterization of Performance Predictors and Evaluation of Mowing Practices in Biofiltration Swales*. Report to King County Land and Water Resources Division and others by Center for Urban Water Resources Management, Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, University of Washington, Seattle.

San Francisco Public Utilities Commission, et al. *San Francisco Stormwater Design Guidelines, Appendix A, Stormwater BMP Fact Sheets*, 2010. Available online at: <http://www.sfwater.org/modules/showdocument.aspx?documentid=2778>.

Stormwater Managers Resource Center. <http://www.stormwatercenter.net>.

Stormwater Managers Resource Center, *Stormwater Practices for Cold Climates*. <http://www.stormwatercenter.net/Cold%20Climates/cold-climates.htm>.

Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, *Best Management Practices Handbook*, 2012. Available online at: <http://www.tahoebmp.org/Documents/2012%20BMP%20Handbook.pdf>.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, *Post-Construction Stormwater Management in New Development and Redevelopment, BMP Fact Sheets*. Available online at: [http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=min\\_measure&min\\_measure\\_id=5](http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=min_measure&min_measure_id=5).

Ventura Countywide Stormwater Quality Management Program. *Technical Guidance Manual for Stormwater Quality Control Measures*, 2010. Available online at: [http://www.vstormwater.org/documents/workproducts/technicalguidancemanual/2010revisions/Ventura%20Technical%20Guidance%20Document\\_5-6-10.pdf](http://www.vstormwater.org/documents/workproducts/technicalguidancemanual/2010revisions/Ventura%20Technical%20Guidance%20Document_5-6-10.pdf).

Watershed Management Institute, Inc. *Operation, Maintenance, and Management of Stormwater Management Systems*, 1997. Available online at: <http://www.stormwater.ucf.edu/research/stormwaterOMM/stormwaterom.pdf>.

**General Description**

Vegetated buffer strips (vegetated filter strips, biosrips, filter strips, and grassed filters) are vegetated surfaces that are designed to treat sheet flow from adjacent surfaces. They are an effective, easy to implement BMP that often go unrecognized at industrial and commercial facilities.

Vegetated buffer strips function by slowing runoff velocities and allowing sediment and other pollutants to settle and by providing some infiltration into underlying soils. They are well-suited to treating runoff from roads, roof downspouts, small parking lots, and pervious surfaces. They can be implemented to provide effective pretreatment for detention and infiltration stormwater BMPs.

Vegetated buffer strips can serve as part of a stormwater drainage system and can replace curbs, gutters and storm sewer systems. Therefore, they are best suited for small landscaped portions of industrial or commercial facilities with low peak flow rates. They are not well suited to treat stormwater runoff from industrial areas that have insufficient source control BMPs.

**Inspection/Maintenance Considerations**

Vegetated buffer strips require frequent landscape maintenance. In many cases, vegetated buffer strips initially require intense maintenance, but less maintenance is needed over time. Maintenance tasks may be conducted by a landscaping contractor. Maintenance requirements typically include grass or shrub-growing activities such as irrigation, mowing, trimming, removal of invasive species, and replanting when necessary. Buffer strips require more attention as the volume of sediment increases. Vegetated buffer strips can become a nuisance due to mosquito breeding in level spreaders (unless

**Advanced BMPs Covered**



**Maintenance Concerns**

- Vector Control
- Invasive Species Management
- Vegetation/Landscape Maintenance
- Erosion
- Channelization of Flow
- Aesthetics

**Targeted Constituents**

Sediment	■
Nutrients	■
Trash	▲
Metals	■
Bacteria	●
Oil and Grease	■
Organics	▲

**Legend (Removal Effectiveness)**

- Low ■ High ▲ Medium
- Requires Pretreatment

Note: The removal effectiveness ratings shown in the table are for properly designed, sited, and maintained BMPs. Storm configurations will have variations in pollutant effectiveness.



designed to dewater completely in 96 hours or less) and/or if proper drainage slopes are not maintained.

Inspection Activities	Suggested Frequency
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Once the vegetated buffer strip is established, inspect at least three times per year. Repair all damage immediately.</li> <li>□ Inspect buffer strips after seeding and repair as needed.</li> </ul>	Post construction
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Inspect buffer strip and repair all damage immediately.</li> <li>□ Inspect soil and repair eroded areas.</li> </ul>	After major storms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Inspect for erosion or damage to vegetation, preferably at the end of the wet season to schedule summer maintenance and before major fall runoff to be sure the strips are ready for winter. However, additional inspections after periods of heavy runoff is desirable.</li> <li>□ Inspect pea-gravel diaphragm/level spreader for clogging and effectiveness and remove built-up sediment.</li> <li>□ Inspect for rolls and gullies. Immediately fill with topsoil, install erosion control blanket and seed or sod.</li> <li>□ Inspect to ensure vegetation is well established. If not, either prepare soil and reseed or replace with alternative species. Install erosion control blanket.</li> <li>□ Check for debris and litter, and areas of sediment accumulation.</li> </ul>	Semi-annual
Maintenance Activities	Suggested Frequency
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Water plants daily for 2 weeks after construction.</li> <li>□ Mow regularly to maintain vegetation height between 2 - 4 inches, and to promote thick, dense vegetative growth. Cut only when soil is dry to prevent tracking damage to vegetation, soil compaction and flow concentrations. Clippings are to be removed immediately after mowing.</li> <li>□ Remove all litter, branches, rocks, or other debris. Damaged areas of the filter strip should be repaired immediately by reseeding and applying mulch.</li> <li>□ Regularly maintain inlet flow spreader.</li> <li>□ Irrigate during dry season (April through October) when necessary to maintain the vegetation.</li> </ul>	Frequently, as needed
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Reremulch void areas.</li> <li>□ Treat diseased trees and shrubs, remove dead vegetation.</li> </ul>	Semi-annual
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Remove sediment and replant in areas of buildup. Sediment accumulating near culverts and in channels should be removed when it builds up to 3 in. at any spot, or covers vegetation.</li> <li>□ Limit fertilizer applications based on plant vigor and soil test results.</li> <li>□ Rework or replant buffer strip if concentrated flow erodes a channel through the strip.</li> </ul>	Annual

**Additional Information**

Research (Colwell et al., 2000) indicates that grass height and mowing frequency have little impact on pollutant removal. Consequently, mowing may only be necessary once or twice a year for safety or aesthetics or to suppress weeds and woody vegetation.

Trash tends to accumulate in swale areas, particularly along highways. The need for litter removal is determined through periodic inspection, but litter should always be removed prior to mowing.

The buffer strip should be covered with dense vegetative cover to filter pollutants out of runoff and helps reduce flow velocities and protect the strip from erosion. Fine, close-growing grasses are ideal because increasing the surface area of the vegetation exposed to runoff improves the effectiveness of the swale. Drought tolerant vegetation that can tolerate sediment and debris accumulations is best-suited for vegetated buffer strips.

**References**

California Department of Transportation. *Treatment BMP Technology Report (CTSW-RT-09-239.06)*. April, 2010. Available online at: <http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/snv/stormwater/pdf/CTSW-RT-09-239-06.pdf>.

California Stormwater Quality Association. *Stormwater Best Management Practice Handbook, New Development and Redevelopment*, 2003. Available online at: <https://www.casqa.org/resources/bmp-handbooks/new-development-redevelopment-bmp-handbook>.

California Stormwater Quality Association. *Stormwater Best Management Practice Handbook, New Development and Redevelopment*, 2003. Available online at: <https://www.casqa.org/resources/bmp-handbooks/new-development-redevelopment-bmp-handbook>.

Colwell, Shanti R., Horner, Richard R., and Booth, Derek B. *Characterization of Performance Predictors and Evaluation of Mowing Practices in Biofiltration Swales*. Report to King County Land and Water Resources Division and others by Center for Urban Water Resources Management, Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, University of Washington, Seattle, 2000.

San Francisco Public Utilities Commission, et al. *San Francisco Stormwater Design Guidelines*. Appendix A, Stormwater BMP Fact Sheets, 2010. Available online at: <http://www.sfwater.org/modules/showdocument.aspx?documentid=32738>.

Stormwater Managers Resource Center. <http://www.stormwatercenter.net>.

Tahoe Regional Planning Agency. *Best Management Practices Handbook*, 2012. Available online at: <http://www.tahoebmp.org/Documents/2012%20BMP%20Handbook.pdf>.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Post-Construction Stormwater Management in New Development and Redevelopment. BMP Fact Sheets. Available online at: [http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=min\\_measure&min\\_measure\\_id=5](http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=min_measure&min_measure_id=5).

Ventura Countywide Stormwater Quality Management Program, *Technical Guidance Manual for Stormwater Quality Control Measures*, 2010. Available online at: [http://www.vstormwater.org/documents/workproducts/technicalguidancemanual/2010revisions/Ventura%20Technical%20Guidance%20Document\\_5-5-10.pdf](http://www.vstormwater.org/documents/workproducts/technicalguidancemanual/2010revisions/Ventura%20Technical%20Guidance%20Document_5-5-10.pdf).

Watershed Management Institute, Inc. *Operation, Maintenance, and Management of Stormwater Management Systems*. August, 1997. Available online at: <http://www.stormwater.ucf.edu/research/stormwaterOMM/stormwateromm.pdf>.

**General Description**

The bioretention best management practice (BMP) functions as a soil and plant-based filtration device that removes pollutants through a variety of physical, biological, and chemical treatment processes. These facilities normally consist of a grass buffer strip, sand bed, ponding area, organic layer or mulch layer, planting soil, and plants. The runoff's velocity is reduced by passing over or through a sand bed and is subsequently distributed evenly along a ponding area. Exfiltration of the stored water in the bioretention area planting soil to the underlying soils occurs over a period of days.

**Inspection/Maintenance Considerations**

Bioretention requires monthly landscaping maintenance, including measures to ensure that the area is functioning properly and irrigation during dry periods. In many cases, bioretention areas initially require intense maintenance, but less maintenance is needed over time. Maintenance tasks may be conducted by a landscaping contractor, who may already be hired at the site.

Sediment may enter the bioretention cell and form a crust on the soil surface, limiting the porosity of the soil. Raking of the mulch and soil surface may be needed to maintain high infiltration rates. In cold climates the soil may freeze, preventing runoff from infiltrating into the planting soil.

Bioretention systems can become a nuisance due to mosquito and nidge breeding. Maintaining soil porosity and basic housekeeping practices such as removal of debris accumulations and vegetation management are necessary to ensure that the system dewateres completely (recommended 72 hour residence time or less) to prevent creating mosquito and other vector habitats.

**Advanced BMPs Covered**



**Maintenance Concerns**

- Clogged Soil or Outlet Structures
- Sediment Accumulation
- Invasive Species Management
- Vegetation/Landscape Maintenance
- Erosion
- Channelization of Flow
- Vector Control
- Aesthetics

**Targeted Constituents**

Sediment	■
Nutrients	▲
Trash	■
Metals	■
Bacteria	■
Oil and Grease	■
Organics	■

**Legend (Removal Effectiveness)**

- Low ■ High ▲ Medium
- \* Requires Pretreatment

Note: The removal effectiveness ratings shown in the table are for properly designed, sited, and maintained BMPs; some configurations will have variations in pollutant effectiveness.



Inspection Activities	Suggested Frequency
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect soil and repair eroded areas.	Monthly
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect for erosion or damage to vegetation, preferably at the end of the wet season to schedule summer maintenance and before major fall runoff to be sure the strips are ready for winter. However, additional inspection after periods of heavy runoff is desirable.	Semi-annual inspection
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect to ensure vegetation is well established. If not, either prepare soil and reseed or replace with alternative species. Install erosion control blanket.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Check for debris and litter, and areas of sediment accumulation.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect health of trees and shrubs.	
Maintenance Activities	Suggested Frequency
<input type="checkbox"/> Water plants daily for 2 weeks.	At project completion.
<input type="checkbox"/> Remove litter and debris.	Monthly
<input type="checkbox"/> Remove sediment.	As needed
<input type="checkbox"/> Reremulch void areas.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Irrigate during dry periods.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Treat diseased trees and shrubs.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Mow turf areas.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Repair erosion at inflow points.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Repair outflow structures.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Unclog underdrain.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Regulate soil pH.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Make structural changes or repairs as needed to eliminate pools of water that stand longer than 96 hrs to prevent mosquito production, particularly during the warmer months of the year. Identify and eliminate sources of non-stormwater runoff that feed standing water pools. Coordinate with the local mosquito and vector control agency to control mosquitoes, if necessary.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Remove and replace dead and diseased vegetation.	Semi-annual
<input type="checkbox"/> Add mulch.	Annual
<input type="checkbox"/> Replace tree stakes and wires.	
<input type="checkbox"/> Mulch should be replaced every 2 to 3 years or when bare spots appear or infiltration rates are reduced. Reremulch prior to the wet season.	Every 2-3 years, or as needed

**Additional Information**

Landscaping is critical to the function and aesthetic value of bioretention areas. It is preferable to plant the area with native vegetation, or plants that provide habitat value, where possible. Another important design feature is to select species that can withstand the hydrologic regime they will experience. At the bottom of the bioretention facility, plants that tolerate both wet and dry conditions are preferable. At the edges, which will remain primarily dry, upland species will be the most resilient. It is best to select a combination of trees, shrubs, and herbaceous materials.

For areas with low permeability native soils or steep slopes, bioretention areas can be designed with an underdrain system that routes the treated runoff to the storm drain system rather than depending entirely on infiltration.

Special considerations are required for bioretention to be effective in cold climates – see the Stormwater Managers Resource Center for more information.

**References**

California Stormwater Quality Association. *Stormwater Best Management Practice Handbook, New Development and Redevelopment*, 2003. Available online at: <https://www.casqa.org/resources/bmp-handbooks/new-development-redevelopment-lmp-handbook>.

Riverside County Flood Control and Water Conservation District. *Riverside County Design Handbook for Low Impact Development Best Management Practices*, 2011. Available online at: [http://rcflood.org/downloads/NPDES/Documents/LIDManual/LID\\_BMP\\_Design\\_Handbook.pdf](http://rcflood.org/downloads/NPDES/Documents/LIDManual/LID_BMP_Design_Handbook.pdf).

San Francisco Public Utilities Commission, et al. *San Francisco Stormwater Design Guidelines, Appendix A, Stormwater BMP Fact Sheets*, 2010. Available online at: <http://www.sfpwater.org/modules/showdocument.aspx?documentid=2778>.

Stormwater Managers Resource Center. <http://www.stormwatercenter.net>.

Stormwater Managers Resource Center, *Stormwater Practices for Cold Climates*. <http://www.stormwatercenter.net/Cold%20Climates/cold-climates.htm>.

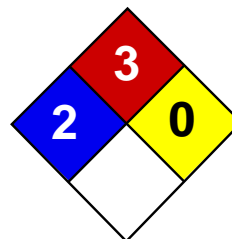
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Post-Construction Stormwater Management in New Development and Redevelopment. BMP Fact Sheets. Available online at: [http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=min\\_measure&min\\_measure\\_id=5](http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/menuofbmps/index.cfm?action=min_measure&min_measure_id=5).

Ventura Countywide Stormwater Quality Management Program. *Technical Guidance Manual for Stormwater Quality Control Measures*, 2010. Available online at: [http://www.vstormwater.org/documents/workproducts/technicalguidancemanual/2010revisions/Ventura%20Technical%20Guidance%20Document\\_5-5-10.pdf](http://www.vstormwater.org/documents/workproducts/technicalguidancemanual/2010revisions/Ventura%20Technical%20Guidance%20Document_5-5-10.pdf).

Watershed Management Institute, Inc. *Operation, Maintenance, and Management of Stormwater Management Systems* 1997. Available online at: <http://www.stormwater.ucf.edu/research/stormwaterOMM/stormwateromm.pdf>.

## **Appendix E: Material Safety Data Sheets**

**Insert here or bind separately and make available to all employees**



Health	2
Fire	3
Reactivity	0
Personal Protection	E

## Material Safety Data Sheet

### Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof MSDS

#### Section 1: Chemical Product and Company Identification

**Product Name:** Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof

**Catalog Codes:** SLE2248, SLE1357

**CAS#:** 64-17-5

**RTECS:** KQ6300000

**TSCA:** TSCA 8(b) inventory: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof

**CI#:** Not applicable.

**Synonym:** Ethanol; Absolute Ethanol; Alcohol; Ethanol 200 proof; Ethyl Alcohol, Anhydrous; Ethanol, undenatured; Dehydrated Alcohol; Alcohol

**Chemical Name:** Ethyl Alcohol

**Chemical Formula:** CH<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH

**Contact Information:**

**Sciencelab.com, Inc.**

14025 Smith Rd.

Houston, Texas 77396

US Sales: **1-800-901-7247**

International Sales: **1-281-441-4400**

Order Online: [ScienceLab.com](http://ScienceLab.com)

**CHEMTREC (24HR Emergency Telephone), call:**

1-800-424-9300

**International CHEMTREC, call:** 1-703-527-3887

**For non-emergency assistance, call:** 1-281-441-4400

#### Section 2: Composition and Information on Ingredients

**Composition:**

Name	CAS #	% by Weight
Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof	64-17-5	100

**Toxicological Data on Ingredients:** Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof: ORAL (LD50): Acute: 7060 mg/kg [Rat]. 3450 mg/kg [Mouse]. VAPOR (LC50): Acute: 20000 ppm 8 hours [Rat]. 39000 mg/m 4 hours [Mouse].

#### Section 3: Hazards Identification

**Potential Acute Health Effects:**

Hazardous in case of skin contact (irritant), of eye contact (irritant), of inhalation. Slightly hazardous in case of skin contact (permeator), of ingestion.

**Potential Chronic Health Effects:**

Slightly hazardous in case of skin contact (sensitizer). CARCINOGENIC EFFECTS: A4 (Not classifiable for human or animal.) by ACGIH. MUTAGENIC EFFECTS: Mutagenic for mammalian somatic cells. Mutagenic for bacteria and/or yeast. TERATOGENIC EFFECTS: Classified PROVEN for human. DEVELOPMENTAL TOXICITY: Classified Development toxin [PROVEN]. Classified Reproductive system/toxin/female, Reproductive system/toxin/male [POSSIBLE]. The substance is toxic to blood, the reproductive system, liver, upper respiratory tract, skin, central nervous system (CNS). Repeated or prolonged exposure to the substance can produce target organs damage.

## Section 4: First Aid Measures

### Eye Contact:

Check for and remove any contact lenses. Immediately flush eyes with running water for at least 15 minutes, keeping eyelids open. Cold water may be used. Get medical attention.

### Skin Contact:

In case of contact, immediately flush skin with plenty of water. Cover the irritated skin with an emollient. Remove contaminated clothing and shoes. Cold water may be used. Wash clothing before reuse. Thoroughly clean shoes before reuse. Get medical attention.

### Serious Skin Contact:

Wash with a disinfectant soap and cover the contaminated skin with an anti-bacterial cream. Seek medical attention.

### Inhalation:

If inhaled, remove to fresh air. If not breathing, give artificial respiration. If breathing is difficult, give oxygen. Get medical attention if symptoms appear.

### Serious Inhalation:

Evacuate the victim to a safe area as soon as possible. Loosen tight clothing such as a collar, tie, belt or waistband. If breathing is difficult, administer oxygen. If the victim is not breathing, perform mouth-to-mouth resuscitation. Seek medical attention.

### Ingestion:

Do NOT induce vomiting unless directed to do so by medical personnel. Never give anything by mouth to an unconscious person. Loosen tight clothing such as a collar, tie, belt or waistband. Get medical attention if symptoms appear.

**Serious Ingestion:** Not available.

## Section 5: Fire and Explosion Data

**Flammability of the Product:** Flammable.

**Auto-Ignition Temperature:** 363°C (685.4°F)

**Flash Points:** CLOSED CUP: 12.78°C (55°F). OPEN CUP: 17.78°C (64°F) (Cleveland).

**Flammable Limits:** LOWER: 3.3% UPPER: 19%

**Products of Combustion:** These products are carbon oxides (CO, CO<sub>2</sub>).

### Fire Hazards in Presence of Various Substances:

Highly flammable in presence of open flames and sparks, of heat. Slightly flammable to flammable in presence of oxidizing materials.

### Explosion Hazards in Presence of Various Substances:

Risks of explosion of the product in presence of mechanical impact: Not available. Slightly explosive in presence of open flames and sparks, of heat, of oxidizing materials, of acids.

### Fire Fighting Media and Instructions:

Flammable liquid, soluble or dispersed in water. SMALL FIRE: Use DRY chemical powder. LARGE FIRE: Use alcohol foam, water spray or fog.

### Special Remarks on Fire Hazards:

Containers should be grounded. CAUTION: MAY BURN WITH NEAR INVISIBLE FLAME Vapor may travel considerable distance to source of ignition and flash back. May form explosive mixtures with air. Contact with Bromine pentafluoride is likely to cause fire or explosion. Ethanol ignites on contact with chromyl chloride. Ethanol ignites on contact with iodine heptafluoride gas. It ignites than explodes upon contact with nitrosyl perchlorate. Addition of platinum black catalyst caused ignition.

### Special Remarks on Explosion Hazards:

Ethanol has an explosive reaction with the oxidized coating around potassium metal. Ethanol ignites and then explodes on contact with acetic anhydride + sodium hydrosulfate (ignites and may explode), disulfuric acid + nitric acid, phosphorous(III) oxide platinum, potassium-tert-butoxide+ acids. Ethanol forms explosive products in reaction with the following compound :



ammonia + silver nitrate (forms silver nitride and silver fulminate), iodine + phosphorus (forms ethane iodide), magnesium perchlorate (forms ethyl perchlorate), mercuric nitrate, nitric acid + silver (forms silver fulminate) silver nitrate (forms ethyl nitrate) silver(I) oxide + ammonia or hydrazine (forms silver nitride and silver fulminate), sodium (evolves hydrogen gas). Sodium Hydrazide + alcohol can produce an explosion. Alcohols should not be mixed with mercuric nitrate, as explosive mercuric fulminate may be formed. May form explosive mixture with manganese perchlorate + 2,2-dimethoxypropane. Addition of alcohols to highly concentrate hydrogen peroxide forms powerful explosives. Explodes on contact with calcium hypochlorite

## Section 6: Accidental Release Measures

### Small Spill:

Dilute with water and mop up, or absorb with an inert dry material and place in an appropriate waste disposal container.

### Large Spill:

Flammable liquid. Keep away from heat. Keep away from sources of ignition. Stop leak if without risk. Absorb with DRY earth, sand or other non-combustible material. Do not touch spilled material. Prevent entry into sewers, basements or confined areas; dike if needed. Be careful that the product is not present at a concentration level above TLV. Check TLV on the MSDS and with local authorities.

## Section 7: Handling and Storage

### Precautions:

Keep locked up.. Keep away from heat. Keep away from sources of ignition. Ground all equipment containing material. Do not ingest. Do not breathe gas/fumes/ vapor/spray. Wear suitable protective clothing. In case of insufficient ventilation, wear suitable respiratory equipment. If ingested, seek medical advice immediately and show the container or the label. Avoid contact with skin and eyes. Keep away from incompatibles such as oxidizing agents, acids, alkalis, moisture.

### Storage:

Store in a segregated and approved area. Keep container in a cool, well-ventilated area. Keep container tightly closed and sealed until ready for use. Avoid all possible sources of ignition (spark or flame). Do not store above 23°C (73.4°F).

## Section 8: Exposure Controls/Personal Protection

### Engineering Controls:

Provide exhaust ventilation or other engineering controls to keep the airborne concentrations of vapors below their respective threshold limit value. Ensure that eyewash stations and safety showers are proximal to the work-station location.

### Personal Protection:

Splash goggles. Lab coat. Vapor respirator. Be sure to use an approved/certified respirator or equivalent. Gloves. Use a respirator if the exposure limit is exceeded.

### Personal Protection in Case of a Large Spill:

Splash goggles. Full suit. Vapor respirator. Boots. Gloves. A self contained breathing apparatus should be used to avoid inhalation of the product. Suggested protective clothing might not be sufficient; consult a specialist BEFORE handling this product.

### Exposure Limits:

TWA: 1900 (mg/m<sup>3</sup>) from OSHA (PEL) [United States] TWA: 1000 (ppm) from OSHA (PEL) [United States] TWA: 1900 (mg/m<sup>3</sup>) from NIOSH [United States] TWA: 1000 (ppm) from NIOSH [United States] TWA: 1000 (ppm) [United Kingdom (UK)] TWA: 1920 (mg/m<sup>3</sup>) [United Kingdom (UK)] TWA: 1000 STEL: 1250 (ppm) [Canada] Consult local authorities for acceptable exposure limits.

## Section 9: Physical and Chemical Properties

**Physical state and appearance:** Liquid. (Liquid.)

**Odor:**

Mild to strong, rather pleasant; like wine or whiskey. Alcohol-like; Ethereal, vinous.

**Taste:** Pungent. Burning.

**Molecular Weight:** 46.07 g/mole

**Color:** Colorless. Clear

**pH (1% soln/water):** Not available.

**Boiling Point:** 78.5°C (173.3°F)

**Melting Point:** -114.1°C (-173.4°F)

**Critical Temperature:** 243°C (469.4°F)

**Specific Gravity:** 0.789 (Water = 1)

**Vapor Pressure:** 5.7 kPa (@ 20°C)

**Vapor Density:** 1.59 (Air = 1)

**Volatility:** Not available.

**Odor Threshold:** 100 ppm

**Water/Oil Dist. Coeff.:** The product is more soluble in water;  $\log(\text{oil/water}) = -0.3$

**Ionicity (in Water):** Not available.

**Dispersion Properties:** See solubility in water, methanol, diethyl ether, acetone.

**Solubility:**

Easily soluble in cold water, hot water. Soluble in methanol, diethyl ether, acetone.

## Section 10: Stability and Reactivity Data

**Stability:** The product is stable.

**Instability Temperature:** Not available.

**Conditions of Instability:** Incompatible materials, heat, sources of ignition.

**Incompatibility with various substances:** Reactive with oxidizing agents, acids, alkalis.

**Corrosivity:** Non-corrosive in presence of glass.

**Special Remarks on Reactivity:**

Ethanol rapidly absorbs moisture from the air. Can react vigorously with oxidizers. The following oxidants have been demonstrated to undergo vigorous/explosive reaction with ethanol: barium perchlorate, bromine pentafluoride, calcium hypochlorite, chloryl perchlorate, chromium trioxide, chromyl chloride, dioxygen difluoride, disulfuryl difluoride, fluorine nitrate, hydrogen peroxide, iodine heptafluoride, nitric acid nitrosyl perchlorate, perchloric acid permanganic acid, peroxodisulfuric acid, potassium dioxide, potassium perchlorate, potassium permanganate, ruthenium(VIII) oxide, silver perchlorate, silver peroxide, uranium hexafluoride, uranyl perchlorate. Ethanol reacts violently/expodes with the following compounds: acetyl bromide (evolves hydrogen bromide) acetyl chloride, aluminum, sesquibromide ethylate, ammonium hydroxide & silver oxide, chlorate, chromic anhydride, cyanuric acid + water, dichloromethane + sulfuric acid + nitrate (or) nitrite, hydrogen peroxide + sulfuric acid, iodine + methanol + mercuric oxide, manganese perchlorate + 2,2-dimethoxy propane, perchlorates, permanganates + sulfuric acid, potassium superoxide, potassium tert-butoxide, silver & nitric acid, silver perchlorate, sodium hydrazide, sulfuric acid + sodium dichromate, tetrachlorosilane + water. Ethanol is also incompatible with platinum, and sodium. No really safe conditions exist under which ethyl alcohol and chlorine oxides can be handled. Reacts vigorously with acetyl chloride

**Special Remarks on Corrosivity:** Not available.

**Polymerization:** Will not occur.

## Section 11: Toxicological Information

**Routes of Entry:** Absorbed through skin. Dermal contact. Eye contact. Inhalation. Ingestion.

**Toxicity to Animals:**

WARNING: THE LC50 VALUES HEREUNDER ARE ESTIMATED ON THE BASIS OF A 4-HOUR EXPOSURE. Acute oral toxicity (LD50): 3450 mg/kg [Mouse]. Acute toxicity of the vapor (LC50): 39000 mg/m<sup>3</sup> 4 hours [Mouse].

**Chronic Effects on Humans:**

CARCINOGENIC EFFECTS: A4 (Not classifiable for human or animal.) by ACGIH. MUTAGENIC EFFECTS: Mutagenic for mammalian somatic cells. Mutagenic for bacteria and/or yeast. TERATOGENIC EFFECTS: Classified PROVEN for human. DEVELOPMENTAL TOXICITY: Classified Development toxin [PROVEN]. Classified Reproductive system/toxin/female, Reproductive system/toxin/male [POSSIBLE]. Causes damage to the following organs: blood, the reproductive system, liver, upper respiratory tract, skin, central nervous system (CNS).

**Other Toxic Effects on Humans:**

Hazardous in case of skin contact (irritant), of inhalation. Slightly hazardous in case of skin contact (permeator), of ingestion.

**Special Remarks on Toxicity to Animals:**

Lowest Published Dose/Conc: LDL[Human] - Route: Oral; Dose: 1400 mg/kg LDL[Human child] - Route: Oral; Dose: 2000 mg/kg LDL[Rabbit] - Route: Skin; Dose: 20000 mg/kg

**Special Remarks on Chronic Effects on Humans:**

May affect genetic material (mutagenic) Causes adverse reproductive effects and birth defects (teratogenic) , based on moderate to heavy consumption. May cause cancer based on animal data. Human: passes through the placenta, excreted in maternal milk.

**Special Remarks on other Toxic Effects on Humans:**

Acute potential health effects: Skin: causes skin irritation Eyes: causes eye irritation Ingestion: May cause gastrointestinal tract irritation with nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and alterations in gastric secretions. May affect behavior/central nervous system (central nervous system depression - amnesia, headache, muscular incoordination, excitation, mild euphoria, slurred speech, drowsiness, staggering gait, fatigue, changes in mood/personality, excessive talking, dizziness, ataxia, somnolence, coma/narcosis, hallucinations, distorted perceptions, general anesthetic), peripheral nervous system (spastic paralysis)vision (diplopia). Moderately toxic and narcotic in high concentrations. May also affect metabolism, blood, liver, respiration (dyspnea), and endocrine system. May affect respiratory tract, cardiovascular(cardiac arrhythmias, hypotension), and urinary systems. Inhalation: May cause irritation of the respiratory tract and affect behavior/central nervous system with symptoms similar to ingestion. Chronic Potential Health Effects: Skin: Prolonged or repeated skin contact may casue dermatitis, an allergic reaction. Ingestion: Prolonged or repeated ingestion will have similiar effects as acute ingestion. It may also affect the brain.

**Section 12: Ecological Information**

**Ecotoxicity:** Ecotoxicity in water (LC50): 14000 mg/l 96 hours [Rainbow trout]. 11200 mg/l 24 hours [fingerling trout].

**BOD5 and COD:** Not available.

**Products of Biodegradation:**

Possibly hazardous short term degradation products are not likely. However, long term degradation products may arise.

**Toxicity of the Products of Biodegradation:** The product itself and its products of degradation are not toxic.

**Special Remarks on the Products of Biodegradation:** Not available.

**Section 13: Disposal Considerations**

**Waste Disposal:**

Waste must be disposed of in accordance with federal, state and local environmental control regulations.

**Section 14: Transport Information**

**DOT Classification:** CLASS 3: Flammable liquid.

**Identification :** Ethanol UNNA: 1170 PG: II

**Special Provisions for Transport:** Not available.

## Section 15: Other Regulatory Information

### Federal and State Regulations:

California prop. 65: This product contains the following ingredients for which the State of California has found to cause cancer, birth defects or other reproductive harm, which would require a warning under the statute: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof (in alcoholic beverages) California prop. 65: This product contains the following ingredients for which the State of California has found to cause birth defects which would require a warning under the statute: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof (in alcoholic beverages) Connecticut hazardous material survey.: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof Illinois toxic substances disclosure to employee act: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof Rhode Island RTK hazardous substances: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof Pennsylvania RTK: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof Florida: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof Minnesota: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof Massachusetts RTK: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof Massachusetts spill list: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof New Jersey: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof Tennessee: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof California - Directors List of Hazardous Substances (8 CCR 339): Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof TSCA 8(b) inventory: Ethyl alcohol 200 Proof

### Other Regulations:

OSHA: Hazardous by definition of Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200). EINECS: This product is on the European Inventory of Existing Commercial Chemical Substances.

### Other Classifications:

#### WHMIS (Canada):

CLASS B-2: Flammable liquid with a flash point lower than 37.8°C (100°F). CLASS D-2A: Material causing other toxic effects (VERY TOXIC).

#### DSCL (EEC):

R11- Highly flammable. S7- Keep container tightly closed. S16- Keep away from sources of ignition - No smoking.

#### HMIS (U.S.A.):

**Health Hazard:** 2

**Fire Hazard:** 3

**Reactivity:** 0

**Personal Protection:** E

#### National Fire Protection Association (U.S.A.):

**Health:** 2

**Flammability:** 3

**Reactivity:** 0

**Specific hazard:**

#### Protective Equipment:

Gloves. Lab coat. Vapor respirator. Be sure to use an approved/certified respirator or equivalent. Wear appropriate respirator when ventilation is inadequate. Splash goggles.

## Section 16: Other Information

### References:

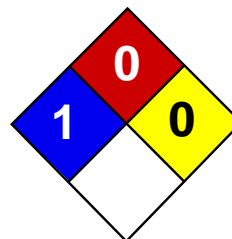
-SAX, N.I. Dangerous Properties of Industrial Materials. Toronto, Van Nostrand Reinold, 6e ed. 1984. -Material safety data sheet emitted by: la Commission de la Santé et de la Sécurité du Travail du Québec. -Hawley, G.G.. The Condensed Chemical Dictionary, 11e ed., New York N.Y., Van Nostrand Reinold, 1987. -The Sigma-Aldrich Library of Chemical Safety Data, Edition II. HSDB, RTECS, and LOLI databases.

**Other Special Considerations:** Not available.

**Created:** 10/09/2005 05:28 PM

**Last Updated:** 05/21/2013 12:00 PM

*The information above is believed to be accurate and represents the best information currently available to us. However, we make no warranty of merchantability or any other warranty, express or implied, with respect to such information, and we assume no liability resulting from its use. Users should make their own investigations to determine the suitability of the information for their particular purposes. In no event shall ScienceLab.com be liable for any claims, losses, or damages of any third party or for lost profits or any special, indirect, incidental, consequential or exemplary damages, howsoever arising, even if ScienceLab.com has been advised of the possibility of such damages.*



Health	3
Fire	0
Reactivity	0
Personal Protection	

## Material Safety Data Sheet

### Sodium Hypochlorite, 5% MSDS

#### Section 1: Chemical Product and Company Identification

**Product Name:** Sodium Hypochlorite, 5%

**Catalog Codes:** SLS1654

**CAS#:** Mixture.

**RTECS:** Not applicable.

**TSCA:** TSCA 8(b) inventory: Sodium hypochlorite; Sodium hydroxide; Water

**CI#:** Not applicable.

**Synonym:** Chlorine Bleach, Bleach, Soda Bleach, Chlorox; Sodium Hypochlorite, Solution, 5% Available Chlorine

**Chemical Name:** Hypochlorous acid, sodium salt, solution

**Chemical Formula:** Not applicable.

**Contact Information:**

**Sciencelab.com, Inc.**

14025 Smith Rd.

Houston, Texas 77396

US Sales: **1-800-901-7247**

International Sales: **1-281-441-4400**

Order Online: [ScienceLab.com](http://ScienceLab.com)

**CHEMTREC (24HR Emergency Telephone), call:**

1-800-424-9300

**International CHEMTREC, call:** 1-703-527-3887

**For non-emergency assistance, call:** 1-281-441-4400

#### Section 2: Composition and Information on Ingredients

**Composition:**

Name	CAS #	% by Weight
Sodium hypochlorite	7681-52-9	4-7
Sodium hydroxide	1310-73-2	<1
Water	7732-18-5	>92

**Toxicological Data on Ingredients:** Sodium hypochlorite: ORAL (LD50): Acute: 5800 mg/kg [Mouse]. 8910 mg/kg [Rat].

#### Section 3: Hazards Identification

**Potential Acute Health Effects:**

Very hazardous in case of skin contact (irritant), of eye contact (irritant), of ingestion, . Hazardous in case of skin contact (corrosive), of eye contact (corrosive). Slightly hazardous in case of inhalation (lung sensitizer). Non-corrosive for lungs. Liquid or spray mist may produce tissue damage particularly on mucous membranes of eyes, mouth and respiratory tract. Skin contact may produce burns. Inhalation of the spray mist may produce severe irritation of respiratory tract, characterized by coughing, choking, or shortness of breath. Prolonged exposure may result in skin burns and ulcerations. Over-exposure by inhalation may cause respiratory irritation. Inflammation of the eye is characterized by redness, watering, and itching. Skin inflammation is characterized by itching, scaling, reddening, or, occasionally, blistering.

**Potential Chronic Health Effects:**

Slightly hazardous in case of skin contact (sensitizer). CARCINOGENIC EFFECTS: Classified 3 (Not classifiable for human.) by IARC [Sodium hypochlorite]. MUTAGENIC EFFECTS: Mutagenic for bacteria and/or yeast. [Sodium hypochlorite]. Mutagenic for mammalian somatic cells. [Sodium hydroxide]. TERATOGENIC EFFECTS: Not available. DEVELOPMENTAL TOXICITY: Not available. The substance may be toxic to lungs, mucous membranes, skin, eyes. Repeated or prolonged exposure to the substance can produce target organs damage. Repeated or prolonged contact with spray mist may produce chronic eye irritation and severe skin irritation. Repeated or prolonged exposure to spray mist may produce respiratory tract irritation leading to frequent attacks of bronchial infection.

**Section 4: First Aid Measures****Eye Contact:**

Check for and remove any contact lenses. In case of contact, immediately flush eyes with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Cold water may be used. Get medical attention immediately.

**Skin Contact:**

In case of contact, immediately flush skin with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes while removing contaminated clothing and shoes. Cover the irritated skin with an emollient. Cold water may be used. Wash clothing before reuse. Thoroughly clean shoes before reuse. Get medical attention immediately.

**Serious Skin Contact:**

Wash with a disinfectant soap and cover the contaminated skin with an anti-bacterial cream. Seek medical attention.

**Inhalation:**

If inhaled, remove to fresh air. If not breathing, give artificial respiration. If breathing is difficult, give oxygen. Get medical attention immediately.

**Serious Inhalation:**

Evacuate the victim to a safe area as soon as possible. Loosen tight clothing such as a collar, tie, belt or waistband. If breathing is difficult, administer oxygen. If the victim is not breathing, perform mouth-to-mouth resuscitation. Seek medical attention.

**Ingestion:**

Do NOT induce vomiting unless directed to do so by medical personnel. Never give anything by mouth to an unconscious person. Loosen tight clothing such as a collar, tie, belt or waistband. Get medical attention if symptoms appear.

**Serious Ingestion:** Not available.

**Section 5: Fire and Explosion Data**

**Flammability of the Product:** Non-flammable.

**Auto-Ignition Temperature:** Not applicable.

**Flash Points:** Not applicable.

**Flammable Limits:** Not applicable.

**Products of Combustion:** Not available.

**Fire Hazards in Presence of Various Substances:** combustible materials, metals, organic materials

**Explosion Hazards in Presence of Various Substances:**

Slightly explosive in presence of open flames and sparks. Non-explosive in presence of shocks.

**Fire Fighting Media and Instructions:** Not applicable.

**Special Remarks on Fire Hazards:**

Releases chlorine when heated above 35 deg. C. The substance itself is non-combustible and does not burn. However, when heated to decomposition it emits corrosive and/or toxic fumes. May ignite combustibles. Fire risk in contact with organic materials. Contact with metals may evolve flammable hydrogen gas.

**Special Remarks on Explosion Hazards:**

Anydrous Sodium Hypochlorite is very explosive. Primary amines and calcium hypochlorite or sodium hypochlorite react to form normal chloroamines, which are explosive. Interaction of ethyleneimine with sodium (or other) hypochlorite gives the explosive N-chloro compd. Removal of formic acid from industrial waste streams with sodium hypochlorite soln becomes explosive at 55 deg C. Several explosions involving methanol and sodium hypochlorite were attributed to formation of methyl hypochlorite, especially in presence of acid or other esterification catalyst. Use of sodium hypochlorite soln to destroy acidified benzyl cyanide residues caused a violent explosion, thought to have been due to formation of nitrogen trichloride. (Sodium hypochlorite)

**Section 6: Accidental Release Measures****Small Spill:**

Dilute with water and mop up, or absorb with an inert dry material and place in an appropriate waste disposal container.

**Large Spill:**

Corrosive liquid. Oxidizing material. Stop leak if without risk. Absorb with DRY earth, sand or other non-combustible material. Do not get water inside container. Avoid contact with a combustible material (wood, paper, oil, clothing...). Keep substance damp using water spray. Do not touch spilled material. Use water spray curtain to divert vapor drift. Prevent entry into sewers, basements or confined areas; dike if needed. Call for assistance on disposal. Be careful that the product is not present at a concentration level above TLV. Check TLV on the MSDS and with local authorities.

**Section 7: Handling and Storage****Precautions:**

Keep locked up.. Keep container dry. Keep away from heat. Keep away from sources of ignition. Keep away from combustible material.. Do not ingest. Do not breathe gas/fumes/ vapor/spray. Never add water to this product. In case of insufficient ventilation, wear suitable respiratory equipment. If ingested, seek medical advice immediately and show the container or the label. Avoid contact with skin and eyes. Keep away from incompatibles such as reducing agents, combustible materials, organic materials, metals, acids.

**Storage:**

Keep container tightly closed. Keep container in a cool, well-ventilated area. Separate from acids, alkalis, reducing agents and combustibles. See NFPA 43A, Code for the Storage of Liquid and Solid Oxidizers. Air Sensitive Sensitive to light. Store in light-resistant containers.

**Section 8: Exposure Controls/Personal Protection****Engineering Controls:**

Provide exhaust ventilation or other engineering controls to keep the airborne concentrations of vapors below their respective threshold limit value.

**Personal Protection:**

Face shield. Full suit. Vapor respirator. Be sure to use an approved/certified respirator or equivalent. Gloves. Boots.

**Personal Protection in Case of a Large Spill:**

Splash goggles. Full suit. Vapor respirator. Boots. Gloves. A self contained breathing apparatus should be used to avoid inhalation of the product. Suggested protective clothing might not be sufficient; consult a specialist BEFORE handling this product.

**Exposure Limits:**

Sodium hypochlorite TWA: 1 CEIL: 1 (ppm as Cl<sub>2</sub>) STEL: 1 (ppm as Cl<sub>2</sub>) from ACGIH (TLV) [United States] Sodium hydroxide STEL: 2 (mg/m<sup>3</sup>) from ACGIH (TLV) [United States] TWA: 2 CEIL: 2 (mg/m<sup>3</sup>) from OSHA (PEL) [United States] CEIL: 2 (mg/m<sup>3</sup>) from NIOSH Consult local authorities for acceptable exposure limits.

**Section 9: Physical and Chemical Properties**



**Physical state and appearance:** Liquid.

**Odor:** Characteristic. Chlorine-like (Slight.)

**Taste:** Not available.

**Molecular Weight:** Not applicable.

**Color:** Colorless to light greenish yellow

**pH (1% soln/water):** Neutral.

**Boiling Point:** Decomposition temperature: 40°C (104°F)

**Melting Point:** Not available.

**Critical Temperature:** Not available.

**Specific Gravity:** 1.07 - 1.093 (Water = 1)

**Vapor Pressure:** 2.3 kPa (@ 20°C)

**Vapor Density:** The highest known value is 0.62 (Air = 1) (Water).

**Volatility:** Not available.

**Odor Threshold:** Not available.

**Water/Oil Dist. Coeff.:** Not available.

**Ionicity (in Water):** Not available.

**Dispersion Properties:** See solubility in water.

**Solubility:** Easily soluble in cold water.

## Section 10: Stability and Reactivity Data

**Stability:** The product is stable.

**Instability Temperature:** Not available.

**Conditions of Instability:** Incompatible materials. light, air, heat

**Incompatibility with various substances:** Reactive with reducing agents, combustible materials, organic materials, metals, acids.

**Corrosivity:**

Extremely corrosive in presence of aluminum. Corrosive in presence of stainless steel(304), of stainless steel(316). Non-corrosive in presence of glass.

**Special Remarks on Reactivity:**

Decomposed by carbon dioxide from air. Slowly decomposes on contact with air. Unstable in air unless mixed with sodium hydroxide. Incompatible with ammonium acetate, ammonium carbonate, ammonium nitrate, ammonium oxalate, and ammonium phosphate. Decomposition of sodium hypochlorite takes place within a few seconds with these salts. Also incompatible with primary amines, phenyl acetonitrile, ethyleneimine, methanol, acidified benzyl cyanide, formic acid, urea, nitro compounds, methylcellulose, cellulose, aziridine, ether, ammonia. Mixing this product with chemicals (e.g. ammonia, acids, detergents, etc.) or organic matter (e.g. urine, feces, etc.) will release chlorine gas. Chloramine gas may be evolved when ammonia and bleach are mixed. Decomposed by hot water. Sensitive to light. Exposure to light accelerates decomposition.

**Special Remarks on Corrosivity:**

Sodium Hypochlorite is extremely corrosive to brass, and moderately corrosive to bronze. There is no corrosivity information for copper.

**Polymerization:** Will not occur.

## Section 11: Toxicological Information

**Routes of Entry:** Absorbed through skin. Eye contact. Inhalation. Ingestion.

**Toxicity to Animals:** Acute oral toxicity (LD50): 5800 mg/kg [Mouse]. (Sodium hypochlorite).

**Chronic Effects on Humans:**

**CARCINOGENIC EFFECTS:** Classified 3 (Not classifiable for human.) by IARC [Sodium hypochlorite]. **MUTAGENIC EFFECTS:** Mutagenic for bacteria and/or yeast. [Sodium hypochlorite]. Mutagenic for mammalian somatic cells. [Sodium hydroxide]. Contains material which may cause damage to the following organs: lungs, mucous membranes, skin, eyes.

**Other Toxic Effects on Humans:**

Very hazardous in case of skin contact (irritant), of ingestion, . Hazardous in case of skin contact (corrosive), of eye contact (corrosive). Slightly hazardous in case of inhalation (lung sensitizer, lung corrosive).

**Special Remarks on Toxicity to Animals:** Not available.

**Special Remarks on Chronic Effects on Humans:** May affect genetic material (mutagenic) (Sodium hypochlorite)

**Special Remarks on other Toxic Effects on Humans:**

Potential Health Effects: Can cause severe irritation and possible burns to skin and eyes. Eye contact may also cause corneal and conjunctival edema, conjunctival hemorrhages. Contact with skin may also cause vesicular eruptions and eczematoid dermatitis which becomes evident upon re-exposure. Prolonged or repeated eye contact may cause conjunctivitis. Ingestion can cause burns to the digestive tract. Symptoms may include: 1. pain and inflammation of the mouth, pharynx, esophagus, and stomach, 2. erosion of the mucous membranes (chiefly of the stomach), nausea, vomiting, choking, coughing, hemorrhage, 3. circulatory collapse with cold and clammy skin (due to methemoglobinemia), cyanosis, and shallow respirations, 4. confusion, delirium, coma, 5. edema of the pharynx, glottis, larynx with stridor and obstruction, 6. perforation of the esophagus, or stomach, with mediastinitis or peritonitis. Inhalation causes slight to severe respiratory tract irritation and delayed pulmonary edema. Prolonged or repeated inhalation may cause allergic respiratory reaction (asthma).

## Section 12: Ecological Information

**Ecotoxicity:** Not available.

**BOD5 and COD:** Not available.

**Products of Biodegradation:**

Possibly hazardous short term degradation products are not likely. However, long term degradation products may arise.

**Toxicity of the Products of Biodegradation:** The product itself and its products of degradation are not toxic.

**Special Remarks on the Products of Biodegradation:** Not available.

## Section 13: Disposal Considerations

**Waste Disposal:**

Dilute with water and flush to sewer if local ordinances allow, otherwise, whatever cannot be saved for recovery or recycling should be managed in an appropriate and approved waste disposal facility. Waste must be disposed of in accordance with federal, state and local environmental control regulations.

## Section 14: Transport Information

**DOT Classification:** Class 8: Corrosive material

**Identification:** : Hypochlorite solution UNNA: 1791 PG: III

**Special Provisions for Transport:** Not available.

## Section 15: Other Regulatory Information

**Federal and State Regulations:**

Illinois toxic substances disclosure to employee act: Sodium hydroxide Illinois chemical safety act: Sodium hydroxide New York release reporting list: Sodium hydroxide Rhode Island RTK hazardous substances: Sodium hydroxide Pennsylvania RTK: Sodium hypochlorite; Sodium hydroxide Florida: Sodium hypochlorite Minnesota: Sodium hypochlorite; Sodium hydroxide Massachusetts RTK: Sodium hypochlorite; Sodium hydroxide New Jersey: Sodium hypochlorite; Sodium hydroxide Louisiana spill reporting: Sodium hydroxide TSCA 8(b) inventory: Sodium hypochlorite; Sodium hydroxide; Water CERCLA: Hazardous substances.: Sodium hypochlorite: 100 lbs. (45.36 kg); Sodium hydroxide: 1000 lbs. (453.6 kg);

**Other Regulations:** OSHA: Hazardous by definition of Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).

**Other Classifications:**

**WHMIS (Canada):** CLASS E: Corrosive liquid.

**DSCL (EEC):**

R8- Contact with combustible material may cause fire. R31- Contact with acids liberates toxic gas. R36/38- Irritating to eyes and skin. S28- After contact with skin, wash immediately with plenty of water. S36/37/39- Wear suitable protective clothing, gloves and eye/face protection. S45- In case of accident or if you feel unwell, seek medical advice immediately (show the label where possible).

**HMIS (U.S.A.):**

**Health Hazard:** 3

**Fire Hazard:** 0

**Reactivity:** 0

**Personal Protection:**

**National Fire Protection Association (U.S.A.):**

**Health:** 1

**Flammability:** 0

**Reactivity:** 0

**Specific hazard:**

**Protective Equipment:**

Gloves. Full suit. Vapor respirator. Be sure to use an approved/certified respirator or equivalent. Wear appropriate respirator when ventilation is inadequate. Face shield.

**Section 16: Other Information**

**References:** Not available.

**Other Special Considerations:** Not available.

**Created:** 10/09/2005 06:32 PM

**Last Updated:** 05/21/2013 12:00 PM

*The information above is believed to be accurate and represents the best information currently available to us. However, we make no warranty of merchantability or any other warranty, express or implied, with respect to such information, and we assume no liability resulting from its use. Users should make their own investigations to determine the suitability of the information for their particular purposes. In no event shall ScienceLab.com be liable for any claims, losses, or damages of any third party or for lost profits or any special, indirect, incidental, consequential or exemplary damages, howsoever arising, even if ScienceLab.com has been advised of the possibility of such damages.*

# SAFETY DATA SHEET

## Propane

### Section 1. Identification

<b>GHS product identifier</b>	: Propane
<b>Chemical name</b>	: propane
<b>Other means of identification</b>	: Propyl hydride; n-Propane; Dimethyl methane; Bottled gas; propane in gaseous state; propane liquefied, n-Propane; Dimethylmethane; Freon 290; Liquefied petroleum gas; Lpg; Propyl hydride; R 290; C3H8; UN 1075; UN 1978; A-108; Hydrocarbon propellant.
<b>Product use</b>	: Synthetic/Analytical chemistry.
<b>Synonym</b>	: Propyl hydride; n-Propane; Dimethyl methane; Bottled gas; propane in gaseous state; propane liquefied, n-Propane; Dimethylmethane; Freon 290; Liquefied petroleum gas; Lpg; Propyl hydride; R 290; C3H8; UN 1075; UN 1978; A-108; Hydrocarbon propellant.
<b>SDS #</b>	: 001045
<b>Supplier's details</b>	: Airgas USA, LLC and its affiliates 259 North Radnor-Chester Road Suite 100 Radnor, PA 19087-5283 1-610-687-5253
<b>24-hour telephone</b>	: 1-866-734-3438

### Section 2. Hazards identification

<b>OSHA/HCS status</b>	: This material is considered hazardous by the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).
<b>Classification of the substance or mixture</b>	: FLAMMABLE GASES - Category 1 GASES UNDER PRESSURE - Liquefied gas

#### GHS label elements

##### **Hazard pictograms**



##### **Signal word**

: Danger

##### **Hazard statements**

: Extremely flammable gas.  
Contains gas under pressure; may explode if heated.  
May cause frostbite.  
May form explosive mixtures in Air.  
May displace oxygen and cause rapid suffocation.

#### Precautionary statements

##### **General**

: Read and follow all Safety Data Sheets (SDS'S) before use. Read label before use. Keep out of reach of children. If medical advice is needed, have product container or label at hand. Close valve after each use and when empty. Use equipment rated for cylinder pressure. Do not open valve until connected to equipment prepared for use. Use a back flow preventative device in the piping. Use only equipment of compatible materials of construction. Always keep container in upright position. Approach suspected leak area with caution.

##### **Prevention**

: Keep away from heat, hot surfaces, sparks, open flames and other ignition sources. No smoking.

##### **Response**

: Leaking gas fire: Do not extinguish, unless leak can be stopped safely. Eliminate all ignition sources if safe to do so.

##### **Storage**

: Protect from sunlight when ambient temperature exceeds 52°C/125°F. Store in a well-ventilated place.

## Section 2. Hazards identification

- Disposal** : Not applicable.
- Hazards not otherwise classified** : In addition to any other important health or physical hazards, this product may displace oxygen and cause rapid suffocation.

## Section 3. Composition/information on ingredients

- Substance/mixture** : Substance
- Chemical name** : propane
- Other means of identification** : Propyl hydride; n-Propane; Dimethyl methane; Bottled gas; propane in gaseous state; propane liquefied, n-Propane; Dimethylmethane; Freon 290; Liquefied petroleum gas; Lpg; Propyl hydride; R 290; C3H8; UN 1075; UN 1978; A-108; Hydrocarbon propellant.

### CAS number/other identifiers

- CAS number** : 74-98-6
- Product code** : 001045

Ingredient name	%	CAS number
Propane	100	74-98-6

Any concentration shown as a range is to protect confidentiality or is due to batch variation.

**There are no additional ingredients present which, within the current knowledge of the supplier and in the concentrations applicable, are classified as hazardous to health or the environment and hence require reporting in this section.**

Occupational exposure limits, if available, are listed in Section 8.

## Section 4. First aid measures

### Description of necessary first aid measures

- Eye contact** : Immediately flush eyes with plenty of water, occasionally lifting the upper and lower eyelids. Check for and remove any contact lenses. Continue to rinse for at least 10 minutes. Get medical attention if irritation occurs.
- Inhalation** : Remove victim to fresh air and keep at rest in a position comfortable for breathing. If not breathing, if breathing is irregular or if respiratory arrest occurs, provide artificial respiration or oxygen by trained personnel. It may be dangerous to the person providing aid to give mouth-to-mouth resuscitation. Get medical attention if adverse health effects persist or are severe. If unconscious, place in recovery position and get medical attention immediately. Maintain an open airway. Loosen tight clothing such as a collar, tie, belt or waistband.
- Skin contact** : Wash contaminated skin with soap and water. Remove contaminated clothing and shoes. To avoid the risk of static discharges and gas ignition, soak contaminated clothing thoroughly with water before removing it. Get medical attention if symptoms occur. Wash clothing before reuse. Clean shoes thoroughly before reuse.
- Ingestion** : As this product is a gas, refer to the inhalation section.

### Most important symptoms/effects, acute and delayed

#### Potential acute health effects

- Eye contact** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Inhalation** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Skin contact** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Frostbite** : Try to warm up the frozen tissues and seek medical attention.
- Ingestion** : As this product is a gas, refer to the inhalation section.

#### Over-exposure signs/symptoms

- Eye contact** : No specific data.
- Inhalation** : No specific data.
- Skin contact** : No specific data.

## Section 4. First aid measures

**Ingestion** : No specific data.

### Indication of immediate medical attention and special treatment needed, if necessary

**Notes to physician** : Treat symptomatically. Contact poison treatment specialist immediately if large quantities have been ingested or inhaled.

**Specific treatments** : No specific treatment.

**Protection of first-aiders** : No action shall be taken involving any personal risk or without suitable training. It may be dangerous to the person providing aid to give mouth-to-mouth resuscitation.

See toxicological information (Section 11)

## Section 5. Fire-fighting measures

### Extinguishing media

**Suitable extinguishing media** : Use an extinguishing agent suitable for the surrounding fire.

**Unsuitable extinguishing media** : None known.

**Specific hazards arising from the chemical** : Contains gas under pressure. Extremely flammable gas. In a fire or if heated, a pressure increase will occur and the container may burst, with the risk of a subsequent explosion.

**Hazardous thermal decomposition products** : Decomposition products may include the following materials:  
carbon dioxide  
carbon monoxide

**Special protective actions for fire-fighters** : Promptly isolate the scene by removing all persons from the vicinity of the incident if there is a fire. No action shall be taken involving any personal risk or without suitable training. Contact supplier immediately for specialist advice. Move containers from fire area if this can be done without risk. Use water spray to keep fire-exposed containers cool. If involved in fire, shut off flow immediately if it can be done without risk. If this is impossible, withdraw from area and allow fire to burn. Fight fire from protected location or maximum possible distance. Eliminate all ignition sources if safe to do so.

**Special protective equipment for fire-fighters** : Fire-fighters should wear appropriate protective equipment and self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA) with a full face-piece operated in positive pressure mode.

## Section 6. Accidental release measures

### Personal precautions, protective equipment and emergency procedures

**For non-emergency personnel** : Accidental releases pose a serious fire or explosion hazard. No action shall be taken involving any personal risk or without suitable training. Evacuate surrounding areas. Keep unnecessary and unprotected personnel from entering. Shut off all ignition sources. No flares, smoking or flames in hazard area. Avoid breathing gas. Provide adequate ventilation. Wear appropriate respirator when ventilation is inadequate. Put on appropriate personal protective equipment.

**For emergency responders** : If specialised clothing is required to deal with the spillage, take note of any information in Section 8 on suitable and unsuitable materials. See also the information in "For non-emergency personnel".

**Environmental precautions** : Ensure emergency procedures to deal with accidental gas releases are in place to avoid contamination of the environment. Inform the relevant authorities if the product has caused environmental pollution (sewers, waterways, soil or air).

### Methods and materials for containment and cleaning up

**Small spill** : Immediately contact emergency personnel. Stop leak if without risk. Use spark-proof tools and explosion-proof equipment.

## Section 6. Accidental release measures

- Large spill** : Immediately contact emergency personnel. Stop leak if without risk. Use spark-proof tools and explosion-proof equipment. Note: see Section 1 for emergency contact information and Section 13 for waste disposal.

## Section 7. Handling and storage

### Precautions for safe handling

- Protective measures** : Put on appropriate personal protective equipment (see Section 8). Contains gas under pressure. Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothing. Avoid breathing gas. Use only with adequate ventilation. Wear appropriate respirator when ventilation is inadequate. Do not enter storage areas and confined spaces unless adequately ventilated. Store and use away from heat, sparks, open flame or any other ignition source. Use explosion-proof electrical (ventilating, lighting and material handling) equipment. Use only non-sparking tools. Empty containers retain product residue and can be hazardous. Do not puncture or incinerate container. Use equipment rated for cylinder pressure. Close valve after each use and when empty. Protect cylinders from physical damage; do not drag, roll, slide, or drop. Use a suitable hand truck for cylinder movement.

- Advice on general occupational hygiene** : Eating, drinking and smoking should be prohibited in areas where this material is handled, stored and processed. Workers should wash hands and face before eating, drinking and smoking. Remove contaminated clothing and protective equipment before entering eating areas. See also Section 8 for additional information on hygiene measures.

- Conditions for safe storage, including any incompatibilities** : Store in accordance with local regulations. Store in a segregated and approved area. Store away from direct sunlight in a dry, cool and well-ventilated area, away from incompatible materials (see Section 10). Eliminate all ignition sources. Keep container tightly closed and sealed until ready for use. Cylinders should be stored upright, with valve protection cap in place, and firmly secured to prevent falling or being knocked over. Cylinder temperatures should not exceed 52 °C (125 °F).

## Section 8. Exposure controls/personal protection

### Control parameters

#### Occupational exposure limits

Ingredient name	Exposure limits
Propane	<p><b>NIOSH REL (United States, 10/2013).</b>            TWA: 1800 mg/m<sup>3</sup> 10 hours.            TWA: 1000 ppm 10 hours.</p> <p><b>OSHA PEL (United States, 2/2013).</b>            TWA: 1800 mg/m<sup>3</sup> 8 hours.            TWA: 1000 ppm 8 hours.</p> <p><b>OSHA PEL 1989 (United States, 3/1989).</b>            TWA: 1800 mg/m<sup>3</sup> 8 hours.            TWA: 1000 ppm 8 hours.</p>

- Appropriate engineering controls** : Use only with adequate ventilation. Use process enclosures, local exhaust ventilation or other engineering controls to keep worker exposure to airborne contaminants below any recommended or statutory limits. The engineering controls also need to keep gas, vapor or dust concentrations below any lower explosive limits. Use explosion-proof ventilation equipment.

- Environmental exposure controls** : Emissions from ventilation or work process equipment should be checked to ensure they comply with the requirements of environmental protection legislation. In some cases, fume scrubbers, filters or engineering modifications to the process equipment will be necessary to reduce emissions to acceptable levels.

### Individual protection measures

## Section 8. Exposure controls/personal protection

- Hygiene measures** : Wash hands, forearms and face thoroughly after handling chemical products, before eating, smoking and using the lavatory and at the end of the working period. Appropriate techniques should be used to remove potentially contaminated clothing. Wash contaminated clothing before reusing. Ensure that eyewash stations and safety showers are close to the workstation location.
- Eye/face protection** : Safety eyewear complying with an approved standard should be used when a risk assessment indicates this is necessary to avoid exposure to liquid splashes, mists, gases or dusts. If contact is possible, the following protection should be worn, unless the assessment indicates a higher degree of protection: safety glasses with side-shields.
- Skin protection**
- Hand protection** : Chemical-resistant, impervious gloves complying with an approved standard should be worn at all times when handling chemical products if a risk assessment indicates this is necessary. Considering the parameters specified by the glove manufacturer, check during use that the gloves are still retaining their protective properties. It should be noted that the time to breakthrough for any glove material may be different for different glove manufacturers. In the case of mixtures, consisting of several substances, the protection time of the gloves cannot be accurately estimated.
- Body protection** : Personal protective equipment for the body should be selected based on the task being performed and the risks involved and should be approved by a specialist before handling this product. When there is a risk of ignition from static electricity, wear anti-static protective clothing. For the greatest protection from static discharges, clothing should include anti-static overalls, boots and gloves.
- Other skin protection** : Appropriate footwear and any additional skin protection measures should be selected based on the task being performed and the risks involved and should be approved by a specialist before handling this product.
- Respiratory protection** : Use a properly fitted, air-purifying or air-fed respirator complying with an approved standard if a risk assessment indicates this is necessary. Respirator selection must be based on known or anticipated exposure levels, the hazards of the product and the safe working limits of the selected respirator.

## Section 9. Physical and chemical properties

### Appearance

- Physical state** : Gas. [Liquefied compressed gas.]
- Color** : Colorless.
- Molecular weight** : 44.11 g/mole
- Molecular formula** : C<sub>3</sub>-H<sub>8</sub>
- Boiling/condensation point** : -161.48°C (-258.7°F)
- Melting/freezing point** : -187.6°C (-305.7°F)
- Critical temperature** : 96.55°C (205.8°F)
- Odor** : Odorless.BUT MAY HAVE SKUNK ODOR ADDED.
- Odor threshold** : Not available.
- pH** : Not available.
- Flash point** : Closed cup: -104°C (-155.2°F)  
Open cup: -104°C (-155.2°F)
- Burning time** : Not applicable.
- Burning rate** : Not applicable.
- Evaporation rate** : Not available.
- Flammability (solid, gas)** : Extremely flammable in the presence of the following materials or conditions: open flames, sparks and static discharge and oxidizing materials.
- Lower and upper explosive (flammable) limits** : Lower: 1.8%  
Upper: 8.4%
- Vapor pressure** : 109 (psig)
- Vapor density** : 1.6 (Air = 1)



## Section 9. Physical and chemical properties

<b>Specific Volume (ft<sup>3</sup>/lb)</b>	: 8.6206
<b>Gas Density (lb/ft<sup>3</sup>)</b>	: 0.116 (25°C / 77 to °F)
<b>Relative density</b>	: Not applicable.
<b>Solubility</b>	: Not available.
<b>Solubility in water</b>	: 0.0244 g/l
<b>Partition coefficient: n-octanol/water</b>	: 1.09
<b>Auto-ignition temperature</b>	: 287°C (548.6°F)
<b>Decomposition temperature</b>	: Not available.
<b>SADT</b>	: Not available.
<b>Viscosity</b>	: Not applicable.

## Section 10. Stability and reactivity

<b>Reactivity</b>	: No specific test data related to reactivity available for this product or its ingredients.
<b>Chemical stability</b>	: The product is stable.
<b>Possibility of hazardous reactions</b>	: Under normal conditions of storage and use, hazardous reactions will not occur.
<b>Conditions to avoid</b>	: Avoid all possible sources of ignition (spark or flame). Do not pressurize, cut, weld, braze, solder, drill, grind or expose containers to heat or sources of ignition.
<b>Incompatible materials</b>	: Oxidizers
<b>Hazardous decomposition products</b>	: Under normal conditions of storage and use, hazardous decomposition products should not be produced.
<b>Hazardous polymerization</b>	: Under normal conditions of storage and use, hazardous polymerization will not occur.

## Section 11. Toxicological information

### Information on toxicological effects

#### Acute toxicity

Not available.

**IDLH** : 2100 ppm

#### Irritation/Corrosion

Not available.

#### Sensitization

Not available.

#### Mutagenicity

Not available.

#### Carcinogenicity

Not available.

#### Reproductive toxicity

Not available.

#### Teratogenicity

Not available.

## Section 11. Toxicological information

### Specific target organ toxicity (single exposure)

Not available.

### Specific target organ toxicity (repeated exposure)

Not available.

### Aspiration hazard

Not available.

**Information on the likely routes of exposure** : Not available.

### Potential acute health effects

- Eye contact** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Inhalation** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Skin contact** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Ingestion** : As this product is a gas, refer to the inhalation section.

### Symptoms related to the physical, chemical and toxicological characteristics

- Eye contact** : No specific data.
- Inhalation** : No specific data.
- Skin contact** : No specific data.
- Ingestion** : No specific data.

### Delayed and immediate effects and also chronic effects from short and long term exposure

#### Short term exposure

- Potential immediate effects** : Not available.
- Potential delayed effects** : Not available.

#### Long term exposure

- Potential immediate effects** : Not available.
- Potential delayed effects** : Not available.

### Potential chronic health effects

Not available.

- General** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Carcinogenicity** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Mutagenicity** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Teratogenicity** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Developmental effects** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
- Fertility effects** : No known significant effects or critical hazards.

### Numerical measures of toxicity

#### Acute toxicity estimates

Not available.

## Section 12. Ecological information

### Toxicity

Not available.

### Persistence and degradability

Not available.

### Bioaccumulative potential

Product/ingredient name	LogP <sub>ow</sub>	BCF	Potential
Propane	1.09	-	low

### Mobility in soil






Soil/water partition coefficient (K<sub>oc</sub>) : Not available.

Other adverse effects : No known significant effects or critical hazards.

## Section 13. Disposal considerations

**Disposal methods** : The generation of waste should be avoided or minimized wherever possible. Disposal of this product, solutions and any by-products should at all times comply with the requirements of environmental protection and waste disposal legislation and any regional local authority requirements. Dispose of surplus and non-recyclable products via a licensed waste disposal contractor. Waste should not be disposed of untreated to the sewer unless fully compliant with the requirements of all authorities with jurisdiction. Empty Airgas-owned pressure vessels should be returned to Airgas. Waste packaging should be recycled. Incineration or landfill should only be considered when recycling is not feasible. This material and its container must be disposed of in a safe way. Empty containers or liners may retain some product residues. Do not puncture or incinerate container.

## Section 14. Transport information

	DOT	TDG	Mexico	IMDG	IATA
<b>UN number</b>	UN1978	UN1978	UN1978	UN1978	UN1978
<b>UN proper shipping name</b>	PROPANE	PROPANE	PROPANE	PROPANE	PROPANE
<b>Transport hazard class(es)</b>	2.1 	2.1 	2.1 	2.1 	2.1 
<b>Packing group</b>	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Environment</b>	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.
<b>Additional information</b>	<p><b>Limited quantity</b> Yes.</p> <p><b>Packaging instruction</b> <b>Passenger aircraft</b> Quantity limitation: Forbidden.</p> <p><b>Cargo aircraft</b> Quantity limitation: 150 kg</p> <p><b>Special provisions</b> 19, T50</p>	<p>Product classified as per the following sections of the Transportation of Dangerous Goods Regulations: 2.13-2.17 (Class 2).</p> <p><b>Explosive Limit and Limited Quantity Index</b> 0.125</p> <p><b>ERAP Index</b> 3000</p>	-	-	<p><b>Passenger and Cargo Aircraft</b>Quantity limitation: 0 Forbidden <b>Cargo Aircraft Only</b> Quantity limitation: 150 kg</p>

## Section 14. Transport information

	<p>For domestic transportation only, UN1075 may be substituted for the UN number shown as long as the substitution is consistent on package markings, shipping papers, and emergency response information. See 49 CFR 172.102 Special Provision 19.</p> <p>Containers of NON-ODORIZED liquefied petroleum gas must be marked either NON-ODORIZED or NOT ODORIZED as of September 30, 2006. [49 CFR 172.301(f), 326(d), 330(c) and 338 (e)]</p>	<p><b><u>Passenger Carrying Ship Index</u></b> 65</p> <p><b><u>Passenger Carrying Road or Rail Index</u></b> Forbidden</p> <p><b><u>Special provisions</u></b> 29, 42</p>			
--	--	---	--	--	--

“Refer to CFR 49 (or authority having jurisdiction) to determine the information required for shipment of the product.”

**Special precautions for user** : **Transport within user’s premises:** always transport in closed containers that are upright and secure. Ensure that persons transporting the product know what to do in the event of an accident or spillage.

**Transport in bulk according to Annex II of MARPOL 73/78 and the IBC Code** : Not available.

## Section 15. Regulatory information

**U.S. Federal regulations** : **TSCA 8(a) CDR Exempt/Partial exemption:** Not determined  
**United States inventory (TSCA 8b):** This material is listed or exempted.  
**Clean Air Act (CAA) 112 regulated flammable substances:** propane

**Clean Air Act Section 112 (b) Hazardous Air Pollutants (HAPs)** : Not listed

**Clean Air Act Section 602 Class I Substances** : Not listed

**Clean Air Act Section 602 Class II Substances** : Not listed

**DEA List I Chemicals (Precursor Chemicals)** : Not listed

**DEA List II Chemicals (Essential Chemicals)** : Not listed

### SARA 302/304

#### Composition/information on ingredients

No products were found.

**SARA 304 RQ** : Not applicable.

### SARA 311/312

**Classification** : Refer to Section 2: Hazards Identification of this SDS for classification of substance.

### State regulations

## Section 15. Regulatory information

- Massachusetts** : This material is listed.  
**New York** : This material is not listed.  
**New Jersey** : This material is listed.  
**Pennsylvania** : This material is listed.

### International regulations

#### International lists

#### National inventory

- Australia** : This material is listed or exempted.  
**Canada** : This material is listed or exempted.  
**China** : This material is listed or exempted.  
**Europe** : This material is listed or exempted.  
**Japan** : This material is listed or exempted.  
**Malaysia** : This material is listed or exempted.  
**New Zealand** : This material is listed or exempted.  
**Philippines** : This material is listed or exempted.  
**Republic of Korea** : This material is listed or exempted.  
**Taiwan** : This material is listed or exempted.

### Canada

- WHMIS (Canada)** : Class A: Compressed gas.  
 Class B-1: Flammable gas.  
**CEPA Toxic substances**: This material is not listed.  
**Canadian ARET**: This material is not listed.  
**Canadian NPRI**: This material is listed.  
**Alberta Designated Substances**: This material is not listed.  
**Ontario Designated Substances**: This material is not listed.  
**Quebec Designated Substances**: This material is not listed.

## Section 16. Other information

- Canada Label requirements** : Class A: Compressed gas.  
 Class B-1: Flammable gas.

### Hazardous Material Information System (U.S.A.)

Health	*	1
Flammability		4
Physical hazards		2

Caution: HMIS® ratings are based on a 0-4 rating scale, with 0 representing minimal hazards or risks, and 4 representing significant hazards or risks. Although HMIS® ratings are not required on SDSs under 29 CFR 1910.1200, the preparer may choose to provide them. HMIS® ratings are to be used with a fully implemented HMIS® program. HMIS® is a registered mark of the National Paint & Coatings Association (NPCA). HMIS® materials may be purchased exclusively from J. J. Keller (800) 327-6868.

The customer is responsible for determining the PPE code for this material.

### National Fire Protection Association (U.S.A.)



Reprinted with permission from NFPA 704-2001, Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response Copyright ©1997, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269. This reprinted material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association, on the referenced subject which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.

## Section 16. Other information

Copyright ©2001, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269. This warning system is intended to be interpreted and applied only by properly trained individuals to identify fire, health and reactivity hazards of chemicals. The user is referred to certain limited number of chemicals with recommended classifications in NFPA 49 and NFPA 325, which would be used as a guideline only. Whether the chemicals are classified by NFPA or not, anyone using the 704 systems to classify chemicals does so at their own risk.

### Procedure used to derive the classification

Classification	Justification
Flam. Gas 1, H220 Press. Gas Liq. Gas, H280	Expert judgment Expert judgment

### History

**Date of printing** : 6/28/2017  
**Date of issue/Date of revision** : 6/28/2017  
**Date of previous issue** : 10/20/2015  
**Version** : 0.02

**Key to abbreviations** : ATE = Acute Toxicity Estimate  
 BCF = Bioconcentration Factor  
 GHS = Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals  
 IATA = International Air Transport Association  
 IBC = Intermediate Bulk Container  
 IMDG = International Maritime Dangerous Goods  
 LogPow = logarithm of the octanol/water partition coefficient  
 MARPOL 73/78 = International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution From Ships, 1973 as modified by the Protocol of 1978. ("Marpol" = marine pollution)  
 UN = United Nations

**References** : Not available.

▣ Indicates information that has changed from previously issued version.

**Other special considerations** : The information below is given to call attention to the issue of "Naturally occurring radioactive materials". Although Radon-222 levels in the product represented by this MSDS do not present any direct Radon exposure hazard, customers should be aware of the potential for Radon daughter build up within their processing systems, whatever the source of their product streams. Radon-222 is a naturally occurring radioactive gas which can be a contaminant in natural gas. During subsequent processing, Radon tends to be concentrated in Liquefied Petroleum Gas streams and in product streams having a similar boiling point range. Industry experience has shown that this product may contain small amounts of Radon-222 and its radioactive decay products, called Radon "daughters". The actual concentration of Radon-222 and radioactive daughters in the delivered product is dependent on the geographical source of the natural gas and storage time prior to delivery. Process equipment (i.e. lines, filters, pumps and reaction units) may accumulate significant levels of radioactive daughters and show a gamma radiation reading during operation. A potential external radiation hazard exists at or near any pipe valve or vessel containing a Radon enriched stream, or containing internal deposits of radioactive material due to the transmission of gamma radiation through its wall. Field studies reported in the literature have not shown any conditions that subject workers to cumulative exposures in excess of general population limits. Equipment emitting gamma radiation should be presumed to be internally contaminated with alpha emitting decay products which may be a hazard if inhaled or ingested. Protective equipment such as coveralls, gloves, and respirator (NIOSH/MHSA approved for high efficiency particulates and radionuclides, or supplied air) should be worn by personnel entering a vessel or working on contaminated process equipment to prevent skin contamination, ingestion, or inhalation of any residues containing alpha radiation. Airborne contamination may be minimized by handling scale and/or contaminated materials in a wet state.

### Notice to reader

## Section 16. Other information

To the best of our knowledge, the information contained herein is accurate. However, neither the above-named supplier, nor any of its subsidiaries, assumes any liability whatsoever for the accuracy or completeness of the information contained herein.

Final determination of suitability of any material is the sole responsibility of the user. All materials may present unknown hazards and should be used with caution. Although certain hazards are described herein, we cannot guarantee that these are the only hazards that exist.

## Appendix F: Annual Reports and Monitoring Reports

**Insert here or bind separately**

The Order, section C.4.e., states:

*“The Discharger shall retain records of all monitoring information, including copies of all reports required by this General Order and records of all data used to complete the application for this General Order. Records shall be maintained for a minimum of three years from the date of the report or application. Records may be maintained electronically. This period may be extended during the course of any unresolved litigation regarding this discharge or when requested by the Regional Water Board Executive Officer.”*